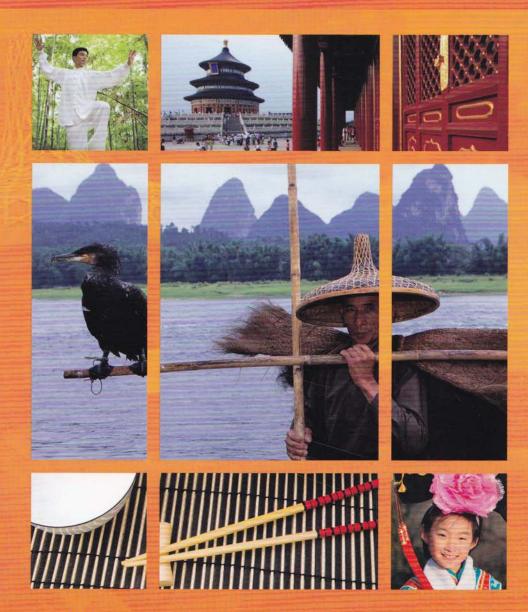


# Discover China



STUDENT'S BOOK THREE

学生用书3



Macmillan Education
Between Towns Road, Oxford, OX4 3PP
A division of Macmillan Publishers Limited
Companies and representatives throughout the world

#### ISBN 9780230406414

Text©Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2013
Designed and illustration ©Macmillan Publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2013
Published by arrangement with Macmillan Publishers (China) Limited

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publishers.

Publishers: Charlotte Liu, Cai Jianfeng Project management: Mary-Jane Newton, Ding Ning Author: Qi Shaoyan Academic advisors: Simon Greenall, Huang Dian Editors: Wang Jianbo, Cai Ying, Eric Leher

Audio materials produced by Sky Productions and Beijing Foreign Language Audiovisual Press

The author and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce their artwork/photographic material:

1TU: pp12(t, m), 13 (t), 16(lb, ic), 18(b), 25(b), 32(b), 33(b), 43(ti, tr, ml, mr, bl), 45(b), 46-47(background), 51, 55(b), 70(b), 71(b), 77(tr), 80(l), 83(t), 85(b), 89(b), 107(t), 108(t, m), 117(a, b), 118(b), 120(ti), 123(b), 124(b), 129(b), 135(b), 136(t), 138-139(background), 141(r), 150-151(b), 153(b), 156(l), 159(l), 162-163(background), 165(b), 172( mr), 178(br); Image Source: pp49(rc), 107(b), 126-127(background), 135(t), 147(t), 160(r), 170(a, b, c), 173(b); Getty Images: pp15, 16(la), 28(b), 39, 49(rb, rd), 67, 132(l), 140(b), 147(b), 152(l); Panorama Media: pp 94-95(b), 95(la, lb), 98-99(t); Corbis: pp21(br), 49(ra), 56(b), 143, 172(ml, b); China Foto Press: pp16(ld), 79, 113(t), 119; Brand X Pictures: pp104(l), 160(l), 178(m); Photodisc: pp60(b), 178(bl); Fancy: pp96(rb), 97(b); Digital Vision: p11(b); He Yongjun: pp21(b), 22-23(background), 27, 30(b), 34-35(background), 58-59 (background), 66(b), 72 (m), 83(b), 86-87(background), 91, 103, 106(b), 110-111(background), 176(b), 182(t), 183 (b); Zhang Beining: pp131, 174(b), 177(r), 180-181(b); Wang Yi: pp77 (bl), 175(t), 179(b); Tommy Pow: pp74-75(background), 162-163(background); Xing Min: p155

Cover photographs by Panorama Media (m); 1TU (tr), (bl), (br); Imagemore (tl)

Commissioned photographs © Macmilian publishers Limited and the Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press 2013

We would like to thank the following reviewers and teachers for their valuable and insightful comments:

Huang Dian (Senior Lecturer in Chinese at the University of Westminster and Chair of the British Chinese Language Teaching Society) and her pilot class, Dr Song Lianyi (Principal Teaching Fellow in Chinese, China & Inner Asia Department, School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London), Qi Yanrong (Instructor in Department of Modern Languages, literatures & Linguistics, at University of Oklahoma), Zhang Jie (Assistant Professor of Chinese, Department of Modern Languages, Literatures and Linguistics, University of Oklahoma), Joan Cho (Translator, Masters of Chinese Translation and Interpretation, University of Queensland), Wang Jianling

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Macmillan Education for information only. Macmillan Education disclaims any responsibility for their content and implies no affiliation or endorsement by their inclusion herein.

Macmillan has made every effort to trace and contact copyright holders before publication. In the event of an error or omission, we will be happy to rectify this as the first opportunity.

#### Printed and bound in China

 2018
 2017
 2016
 2015
 2014
 2013

 10
 9
 8
 7
 6
 5
 4
 3
 2
 1

# Discover



STUDENT'S BOOK THREE

学生用书3





## Introduction

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course, specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students studying Chinese in English-speaking countries. It employs a communicative and integrated approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on communication in real contexts through pair work, group work and a variety of independent and integrated activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

# **Key features**

Discover China's unique communicative coursé design includes a number of distinctive features:

- Topic-driven content in real-life contexts gets students engaged and motivated. The topics in each book are organized around the lives and travel experiences of five young students in China.
- A truly communicative approach lets students learn the language by using it in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally.
- Structured and effective learning design based on the sequence "presentation, practice and production", with activities moving from controlled practice to personalized tasks, facilitates effective learning of the language.
- Systematic vocabulary and grammar development comes through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the Hanyu Shuiping Kaoshi (HSK test) and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework.
- Student-centred grammar learning supplemented with detailed grammar reference allows students to discover the rules for themselves through identifying patterns in the language samples. The grammar reference provides comprehensive and detailed explanations.

- Meaningful and integrated character writing practice through grouping characters with common radicals. These high-frequency characters are presented within the context of the unit theme.
- Insights into Chinese culture, through "Cultural Corner" sections linked to the unit topics, promoting a deeper cultural understanding. Fascinating fullcolour photos, showing the real China, provide visual appeal and draw students into this diverse culture.
- Simplified Chinese characters are used to facilitate learning of the written language used by the majority of Chinese speakers.
- Pinyin matched to the word level instead of individual characters helps students understand how to write and space pinyin meaningfully. Discover China follows the official pinyin orthography of the mainland of China. All pinyin shows the character's original tone, except in those parts of the pronunciation and speaking section where special rules about tonal change are introduced.
- Extra pair work activities for each unit provide additional communicative speaking practice.
- Supported by free online resources including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes, extra character writing sheets and more.

## Workbook

The Workbook provides extensive consolidation of the language skills and knowledge taught in the Student's Book.

Each Workbook unit features clear language objectives which correspond with the Student's Book unit structure and activities. A wide variety of vocabulary and grammar exercises, as well as extra reading and listening activities, provide practice of the core language presented in the Student's Book. Writing practice sections give students the option to extend their Chinese character writing skills beyond the Student's Book requisites. A self-assessment at the end of each unit using "I can..." descriptors enables students to reflect on their individual progress.

# **Characteristics of each level**

Books 1 and 2 cover basic language relating to everyday topics. The focus is on listening and speaking, although there is a writing activity at end of each lesson 2. Character writing practice is available in both the Student's Book and Workbook to help student's learn how to write Chinese characters with the correct stroke order.

Book 1 is for beginners who have not studied any Chinese. To avoid overwhelming students with character reading at the very beginning, pinyin is placed above all Chinese words and characters to provide the necessary language support. However, to help students develop character recognition skills, pinyin does not appear for conversations and passages in the Workbook. Activities in the online unit quizzes, which simulate test questions from the HSK test, have no pinyin.

Book 2 follows on naturally from Book 1. Pinyin is used only in activities with new words and phrases, and the activities in the pronunciation and speaking section of each unit. Most other activities in the book do not carry pinyin. However, versions of all the main conversations and reading passages with pinyin are available for download from *Discover China's* free resources website.

Books 3 and 4 cover language from school life and the work environment. The focus is on the development of language skills, which is conducted through various approaches including guided writing. The lessons contain activities to further enhance students' language skills in all areas across different contexts and functions. A new guided writing section teaches students how to compose natural texts following authentic-like texts. The conversations and reading passages are longer, and pinyin only appears in each unit's vocabulary boxes.

# **Storylines**

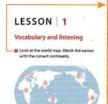
- Book 1 presents the fundamentals of the Chinese language, following the characters' day-to-day lives in Beijing. From simple introductions to going shopping, eating out or playing sports, students encounter a broad range of situations and learn the basic language skills they require.
- Book 2 includes "survival Chinese" for travel and living in China, as the characters hit the road on their winter holidays. They see the Terracotta Warriors in Xi'an and try authentic Sichuan food in Chengdu, make new friends and broaden their knowledge of Chinese to handle typical subjects such as food and drink, hotels, sightseeing and going to the doctor.
- Book 3 takes a deeper look at China's diverse culture. Steve lands his dream job and is sent on assignment as a photojournalist to exciting places all over China. Amanda pursues her love of Chinese history and takes the Chinese history class. This provides students with rich exposure to the use of Chinese language across various cultural and social contexts.
- Book 4 prepares students for using Chinese for work-related purposes. Mark takes up an internship at a Chinese organization in London, acting as a guide for a delegation from China. Wang Yu and Yeong-min volunteer at a summer camp in China, helping foreign students to understand Chinese language and culture. All three gain valuable experience in working with colleagues and customers, and dealing with different situations.



## Unit structure

Student's Book 3 Unit 4 He was not just an actor. 他不只是个演员

#### Pronunciation



#### Pre-listening

Pre-listening activities are key words/expressions, or activate students' background knowledge about the unit topic in preparation for the

水民: 迪士尼电影《花木兰》里的那个

女孩子? 阿曼达: 对啊。花木兰假扮男人, 代替她的

子统这么做, 真是不简单。

水民: 你肯定那个故事是真实的吗?

永民: 传说中的人物, 我觉得不能写

是个演員啊。 永良: 他不只是个演員。他多次说过:

阿曼达:有道理。那你就写他吧。你觉得

永民: 明朝的航海家?他有那么童

吧。你认为李小龙怎么样?

功夫明星李小龙? 不行吧。他只

"我首先是一个武术家,然后才

是演员。"是他把中国功夫介绍

阿曼达: 这个……我不太肯定:

给了世界。

船和东公林?

父亲参军。在古代中国,一个女孩



认为好玩

假粉

ologin 春軍 kindin 肯定

abdreshi 真实

thubnshu 传说 shòuxidn 首先

#### Pronunciation and speaking Usten and repeat the sentences

#### □ 4 水民认 Complete the p

不一定

#### Post-listening

花木兰的故事 practise the target words/expressions, and role-play the conversation.



- -我觉得章碳仑(Napoleon)是法 国历史上的大英雄。 -我不同意你的看法。
- □ 肯定的啊。 我也不是那清楚。

54 - Link & Lesson 1

Now listen and complete the table



# 200ge wo bù tài 这个……我不太 Week. 情定

#### Presentation dialogue

New words list

the order they appear in

context for vocabulary and language

Now give an example of each of the words

II Amanda and Yeong-min are discussing their assignment. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions.

2 他们都说到了哪些人物:

3 阿曼达想写道,为什么?

4 水民想写谁,为什么?

1 作业超是什么?

#### Further listening practice

阿曼达: 当然了。郑和出海到了东

南亚、印度,甚至到了非

洲;中国和很多国家和地

区的贸易和文化交流,是

从他出海开始的。我认为

他对中国历史发展的影

上的航海家那么多, 没什

写。他七次出海、后来很

多人使用的航海图都可

能是他的船队画的死

向, 此李小龙大多了。

水民。 成不同意你的看法。历史

么了不起。

阿曼达: 我认为郑和的生平很值得

永民: 是吗!那你就写你和吧。

A further listening passage based

#### Chinese to go Work in pairs and che

expressions or language

..........

中小龙为什么能够们创拳法?

此影和电视图

事件

#### Pre-reading

Pre-reading activities are designed to pre-teach the key words, or activate

# LESSON 2 Work in pairs. Write down the word learnt with it and their meanings. Reading and writing Read the life story of Bruce Lee on page 56

- □ 1 他出生在美国。 口 1 徐母亲基果别准吊
  - □ 3 他跟父亲学了太极拳。 □ 4 他在香港念大学。 □ 5 他在1970年以后因为《脊蜂侠》
  - □・他自创了 Reading □ 1 他去世的

Reading texts cover a relevant to students' diaries, articles, blogs

#### Post-reading

Controlled, guided and freer activities language in a sequence that is most

# 李小龙生于



Augmender	and the last	24hOn		2 李小龙的武
田金山	Ser Francisco	43 HG	get married	折的?
Y-80		bán		
專料	Cantonese	-ML	move	3. 学小龙主演
old.	opeca	bù		主要是在權
妻子	refe.	4	(for films and TV)	什么是"龄
nữ ác		diamstype	anner.	11公社 遊
女儿	daughter	电视剧	TV series	
toljígobs		Sing Wrights	Liver by	Complete the tab
太极拳	tal chi	(青烯炔)	The Green Homet	story.
ydnastunautr		yljú-chingming	gain instant	V.
林泰華	Wing-chun	一年成名	famile.	The second second
16/8/	have a deep	zhûyên	play the leading	英文名: Bruce
热爱	Jepan for	主演	tole	中文名:
quinti		chéngging		联 站:
奉法	boxing	成功	auccessful.	生 平: 1940
wife	forthe	youro		The state of the s
为了	purpose iff	由于	due to	时间 地点
bdokuó		убоно.	Sent Comment	在美国
包括	include	药物	drug medication	(日金山
Xiyong		guòmín	All of the Party o	Little Co.
香洋	West	过敏	be allergic to	1961/#
zithuting	create by	qushi	Carlo Control	
自创	oneself	去世	pais away	
dúshi)		ylaus	posthumous	
读书	go to school		work	
chistus syirts.	vocational	shangyan	410	1966 FE
职业学校	school	上演	release, play	Section 1
biye		Shedreg your		1971年
华业	graduate	《充亡游戏》	Game of Death	以后在香港
jbu		shingeli	MARKON MARKA	KANE
继续	continue	成为	become	
nkinji		whiming		
年级	grade	著名	famous	
960 M			100	-
数	trach			
				Work in pairs. Ch and complete a t Use the table in I

#### **Guided writing**

for the students to write their own short passage in a similar style.

Look at the first

京剧

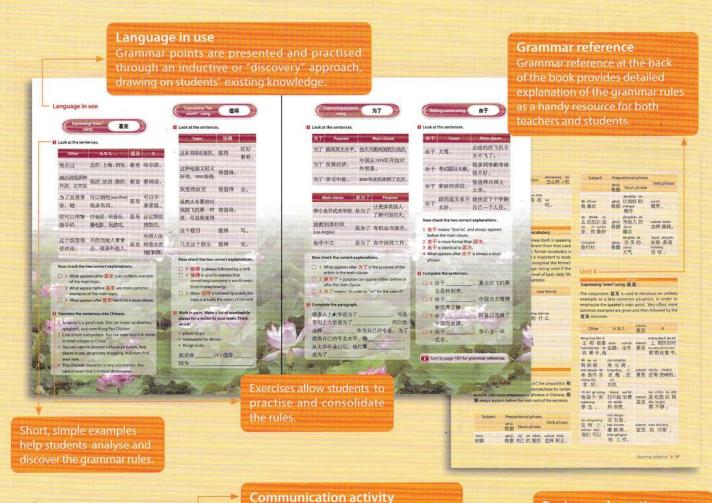
电视剧

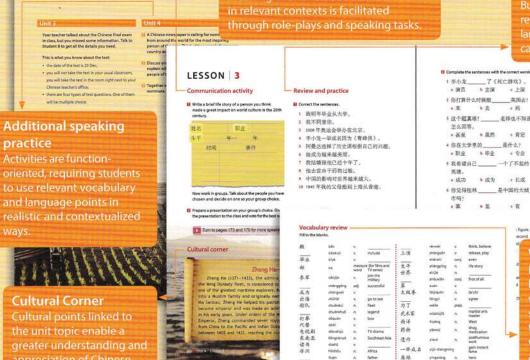
戏剧

歌組

音乐剧

舞組





国家过敏

#### Review and practice

Builds on language acquisition by can also assess their progress.

■ Read the life story of Audrey Hepburn and check the 2003/0 世纪最著名的电影测点之一,她是英国人、 可是却是在比利时 (weigners) 出生的一般从 小就学习跳舞。1948 年晚 19 岁的时候来到 伦敦。惟数字题舞,并进行音乐的和电影 表演 1955年,她因为上部也等《罗马黎归》 \$kimar Molday) 平成名 在 50 年代和 60 年代,林木下河了积多世界景名的电影。62 提為電源女別My Fare Loady 框 並且是的學習 Monatour or Followy) 整在电影中的表演交響 銀多難及的喜爱 赫木不但是一个了不起 一个了不起的 \* 长成 的女洞员、有着美好的外表。她还有一颗 全子一样的心。如今代开始。赫本演出的也 影慢慢变少、她把大部分的时间用于帮助 划人。她到了非洲,南美洲和亚洲。 当脑的人民。1993 年,由于亚病,赫

prep/

有道理 职业学校 Vocabulary review

tastand) (Milipi Litt.

students further consolidate and non-target words in colour for easy reference.

# **Contents**

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing	
Unit 1 你是怎么选的? How did you choose?	College courses and requirements	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving advice</li> <li>Understanding feelings and concerns</li> <li>Understanding course requirements and difficulty levels</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for information</li> <li>Showing concern</li> <li>Writing an email asking for or giving information</li> </ul>	
Unit 2 您具体想找什么? What are you looking for specifically? page 27	Books, libraries and book reviews	<ul> <li>Identifying directions and locations</li> <li>Understanding general comments about books</li> <li>Understanding simple book reviews</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving directions</li> <li>Asking for and giving opinions about books and libraries</li> <li>Writing a simple book review</li> </ul>	
Unit 3 什么时候交作业? When is our assignment due? page 39	Assignments, quizzes and deadlines	<ul> <li>Clarifying information through repetition</li> <li>Understanding simple formal instructions for exams</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving clarification through repetition</li> <li>Starting and ending a conversation politely</li> <li>Writing simple quiz questions and instructions</li> </ul>	
Unit 4 他不只是个电影演 员。 He was not just an actor. page 51	Life stories	<ul> <li>Identifying opinions</li> <li>Understanding accomplishments and achievements</li> <li>Identifying notable events in a life story</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving opinions through reasoning</li> <li>Agreeing and disagreeing</li> <li>Writing a simple life story</li> </ul>	
Unit 5 我是在网上订的票。 I booked the ticket online. page 67	Air travel and extreme weather	<ul> <li>Understanding airport check-in information</li> <li>Confirming and correcting information</li> <li>Understanding a news report about extreme weather</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and checking information</li> <li>Giving reasons and expressing regret</li> <li>Writing a short report about an event involving bad weather</li> </ul>	
Unit 6 您真是太周到了。 You've really thought of everything. page 79	Meeting a host family	<ul> <li>Identifying the location of rooms, household items and facilities</li> <li>Understanding hospitality</li> <li>Understanding cultural differences regarding proper topics of conversation</li> <li>Understanding a diary entry</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Expressing hospitality and appreciation</li> <li>Giving polite responses</li> <li>Writing an informal diary entry</li> </ul>	

Grammar and Vocabulary	Pronunciation	Cultural Corner
Talking about results using resultative complements Talking about the future using 会/将 Giving extra information using 再说/而且 Expressing preferences using 还是······吧 Words for course requirements	Different tones created by adverbs	Chinese calligraphy
Limiting the range of statements using 对·····来说 Emphasizing facts and negating assumptions using 不是····· 而是····· Expressing surprise using 没想到 Making recommendations using 给·····推荐 Directions and sections inside a building, book review essentials	Homophones: 还,得,转	Sun Wu and The Art of War
Expressing "any" using 什么都 Making suggestions using 不如怎么样/吧 Expressing formality through vocabulary Stating a rationale using 根据 Words for clarification, instructions and rubrics in exams	Different ways of greeting people and saying goodbye	Confucius Institutes
Expressing "even" using 甚至 Expressing "be worth" using 值得 Expressing purpose using 为了 Stating causes using 由于 Accomplishments, achievements and importance	Expressions for agreeing and disagreeing	Zheng He — China's Magellan
Expressing influences using 受······影响 Noun phrases with 以 Expressing "unbearable" using 受不了 Stating extreme consequences using 造成 Words for air travel and extreme weather	Expressions for airport check-in	Mongols in China
Describing impressions using 好像 Expressing causal relations using 让 Expressing limited choices using 不是······就是····· Sentence-initial adverbs: 幸好, 可惜, 其实 Room facilities and housework, hospitality	Exchanges of greetings and thanks	Gift-giving in Chinese culture

Title	Unit Topic	Listening and Reading	Speaking and Writing
Unit 7 我喜欢这种简单的 生活方式。 I like this simple lifestyle. page 91	Teaching in Inner Mongolia	<ul> <li>Identifying differences and similarities</li> <li>Identifying a speaker's feelings and emotions</li> <li>Expressing respect and expectations</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Making comparisons and showing preferences</li> <li>Expressing feelings and emotions</li> <li>Writing a simple comparative essay</li> </ul>
Unit 8 真了不起! That's amazing! page 103	Environmental projects in deserts	<ul> <li>Understanding questions and answers in an interview</li> <li>Giving reasons</li> <li>Distinguishing between main ideas and supporting examples</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Expressing praise and respect</li> <li>Conducting an interview</li> <li>Writing a formal report on a problem</li> </ul>
Review 2 page 115			
Unit 9 有志者,事竟成! Where there's a will, there's a way! page 119	The Shaolin Temple and Shaolin kung fu	<ul> <li>Identifying specific information used in giving examples</li> <li>Identifying relationships among roles in a story</li> <li>Understanding a film</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Using exclamations</li> <li>Talking about physical attributes, skills and abilities</li> <li>Writing an article introducing a film, giving the most important information</li> </ul>
Unit 10 千万不能急。 Don't rush things. page 131	Parts of the body, physical movements and injuries	<ul> <li>Identifying physical injuries and medical suggestions</li> <li>Dealing with unfamiliar characters using radical clues in context</li> <li>Understanding simple instructions about movement</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking for and giving medical aid and suggestions</li> <li>Encouraging and reassuring</li> <li>Writing simple instructions about movement</li> </ul>
Unit 11 你说我应该怎 么做? What do you think I should do? page 143	Emotions and feelings, asking for advice	<ul> <li>Identifying attitudes, concerns and worries</li> <li>Understanding suggestions</li> <li>Understanding problems in a letter to an agony aunt</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Expressing concerns, problems and worries</li> <li>Seeking advice</li> <li>Writing to an agony aunt about problems</li> </ul>
Unit 12 我能不能不回答? I'd prefer not to answer that. page 155	Dating, relationships and life expectations	<ul> <li>Understanding expectations and plans</li> <li>Understanding polite counterarguments</li> <li>Understanding different points of view</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Expressing surprise and reassurance</li> <li>Expressing certainty and reservation</li> <li>Talking about life expectations</li> <li>Writing simple tips and suggestions</li> </ul>

Pinyin guide

page 171

Pairwork activities pages 172 and 178

Grammar reference page 184

Picture captions

page 197

Emphasizing with —	
直, 从小, 并, 的确	Chinese students and teachers
Verbally describing how to write simple Chinese characters	Time and space in Chinese culture
Exclamatory sentences	The Shaolin Temple
Imperative sentences	Group exercise in China
Linking words in a conversation	The Butterfly Lovers
Expressions using 难道, 估计, 看来, 我猜etc.	Chinese ways of expressing feelings
	Exclamatory sentences  Imperative sentences  Linking words in a conversation  Expressions using 难道,估计,看来,我猜

English translations page 198
Vocabulary list page 211

# **Classroom expressions**

# 0 1-2

## Classroom expressions used by teachers

Zhège zì gēn nǎxiē hànzì zài shūxiě shang hěn xiàng 这个字跟哪些汉字在书写上很像?

Zhè ge cí de tóng yì cí fǎn yì cí shì shénme 这个词的同义词/反义词是什么?

Wǒ men yǐqián xuéguo nǎxiē yóu zhège zì zǔchéng de cízǔ 我们以前学过哪些由这个字组成的词组?

Zhīdao zhè jù huà de yìsi ma 知道这句话的意思吗?

Wǒ men xiàn zài tǎolùn fāngmiàn de wèntí 我们现在讨论……方面的问题。

Wǒ men fēn zǔ tǎolùn 我们分组讨论。

qǐng xiǎozǔ zhījiān jiāohuàn yìjiàn 请小组之间交换意见。

Nǐ yǒu shénme kànfǎ 你有什么看法?

Qǐng jiē zhe shuō 请接着说。

Háiyǒu shénme biéde yìjiàn ma 还有什么别的意见吗?

Shuō de hěn hǎo dànshì 说得很好,但是……

Nǐ huì zuò tóngyàng de shìqing ma 你会做同样的事情吗?

Nǐ jué de zěnyàng zuò huì gèng hǎo yì diǎn 你觉得怎样做会更好一点?

Shuō de hěn hảo qǐng dà shēng de duì quánbān shuō yí biàn 说得很好,请大声地对全班说一遍。

wǒ men jīn tiān shàng kè jiù shàng dào zhèr 我们今天上课就上到这儿。 Which other Chinese characters does this character look like?

What's the synonym/antonym of this word?

What are the phrases we've learnt that include this word?

Do you know the meaning of this sentence?

Now let's have a discussion on ...

Let's discuss in groups.

Please exchange ideas between groups.

What's your opinion?

Please go ahead (when speaking).

Any other opinions?

You say it well, but...

Can you do the same?

How do you think we can do this better?

You say it very well. Please say it again loudly to the whole class.

That's all for today.



## Classroom expressions used by students

Zhège zì shì bu shì gēn hěn xiàng 这个字是不是跟 ······ 很 像 ?

Wǒ bù zhī dao duì bu duì dàn shì wǒ kěyǐ shì shi 我不知道对不对,但是我可以试试。

Duì bu qǐ wǒ wàng le 对不起,我忘了。

wǒ men zài nǎr xuéguò zhège zì cí 我们在哪儿学过这个字/词?

qǐng nǐ jiěshì yí xià 请你解释一下。

wǒ míngbai le xiè xie 我明白了,谢谢。

Wǒ méi míngbai nǐ de yìsi qǐng zài shuō yí biàn 我没明白你的意思,请再说一遍。

Nǐ de yìsi shì bu shì 你的意思是不是……?

Wǒ zhèyàng shuō xiế duì ma 我这样说/写对吗?

Wǒ zuò shuō wán le 我做/说完了。 Is this character like ... ?

Not sure if I know the answer, but I'll try.

Sorry, I forgot.

Where did we learn this character/word?

Please explain a bit.

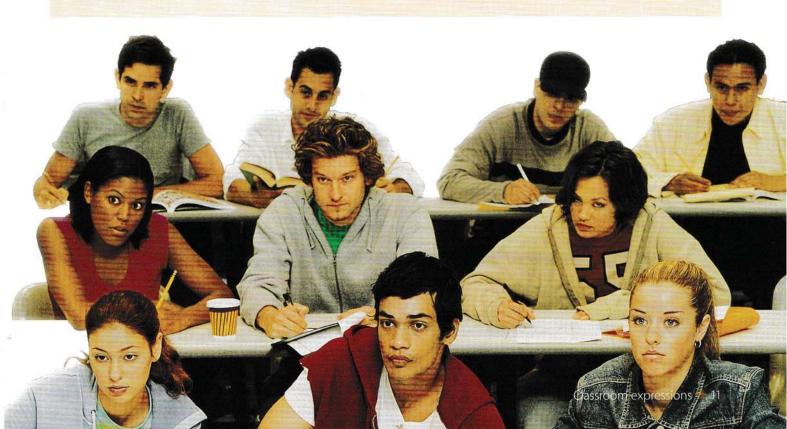
I see, thank you.

I don't understand what you mean. Please say it again.

Do you mean...?

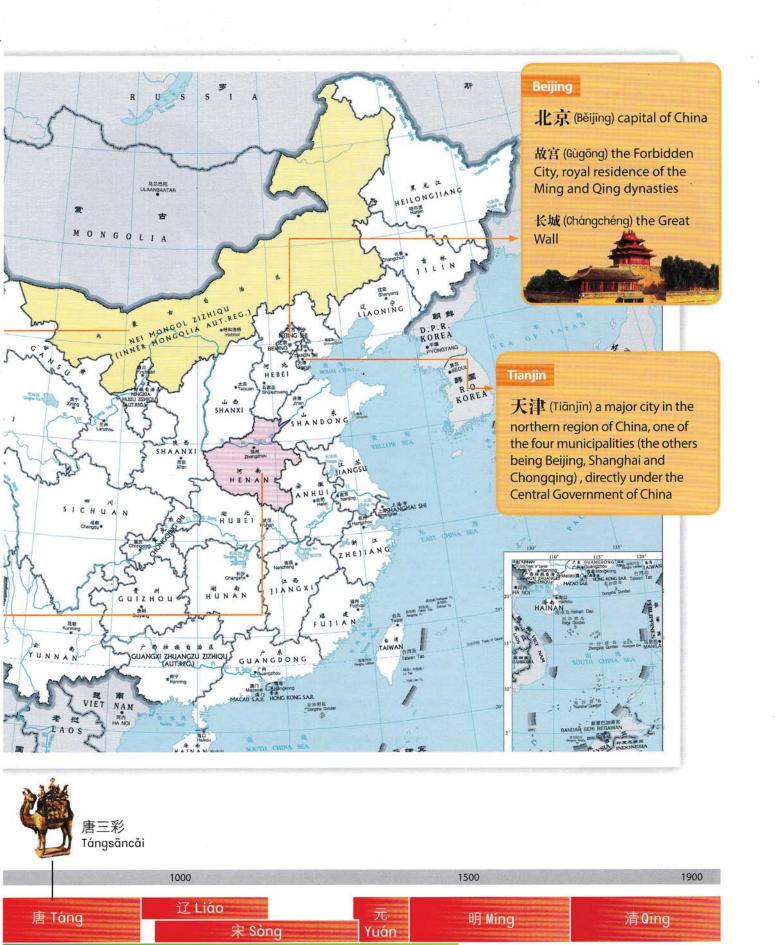
Can I write/say it this way?

I'm finished.



# Places in Discover China KAZAKHSTAN Nei Mongol Zizhiqu 内蒙古自治区 (Nèiměnggǔ Zìzhìqū) Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, in north China 科尔沁沙地 (Kē'ěrqìn shādì) Horqin Desert, one of the biggest deserts in China Urtime. 大青沟国家级自然保护区 (Dàqīnggōu Guójiājí Zìrán Bǎohùqū) XINTIANG UYGUR ZIZHIQU (AUT.REG.) Daqinggou National Nature Reserve Huhhot 呼和浩特 (Hūhéhàotè) Hohhot, capital city of the XIZANG ZIZHIQU LAUT.REG. Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region NEW DELH Tongliao 通辽 (Tōngliáo) a city in the east of Inner Mongolia Henan 河南 (Hénán) Province in the middle of China 嵩山 (Sōng Shān) one of the Five Great Mountains in 图 例 LEGEND China, the Central Great Mountain 少林寺 (Shàolín Sì) the Shaolin Temple, one of the oldest Buddhist temples in China, famous for Shaolin kung fu, located in Songshan Mountain 比例尺 SCALE 1:12 000 000 **Historical timeline** 兵马俑 Bīngmǎyŏng qīngtóngmă 汉 Hàn China Qin Sānguó Europe/Middle East **Americas**

<sup>\*</sup>This timeline does not include all dynasties and eras in China's history. The selected eras illustrate some notable contemporaneous periods in China and abroad.



Aztec Empire

# Meet the characters



Mǎkè
Mark Johnson (马克) comes from
Brisbane. Mark went on holiday to
China after completing high school,
and decided to stay and learn Chinese
at a university in Beijing. Mark enjoys
the outdoors, and he likes surfing and
sailing.



Amàndá
Amanda da Silva (阿曼达) is Mark's
classmate, from São Paulo. She loves
travelling and has a keen interest in
history. As well as Chinese language,
Amanda is also taking classes in Chinese
history at the university.





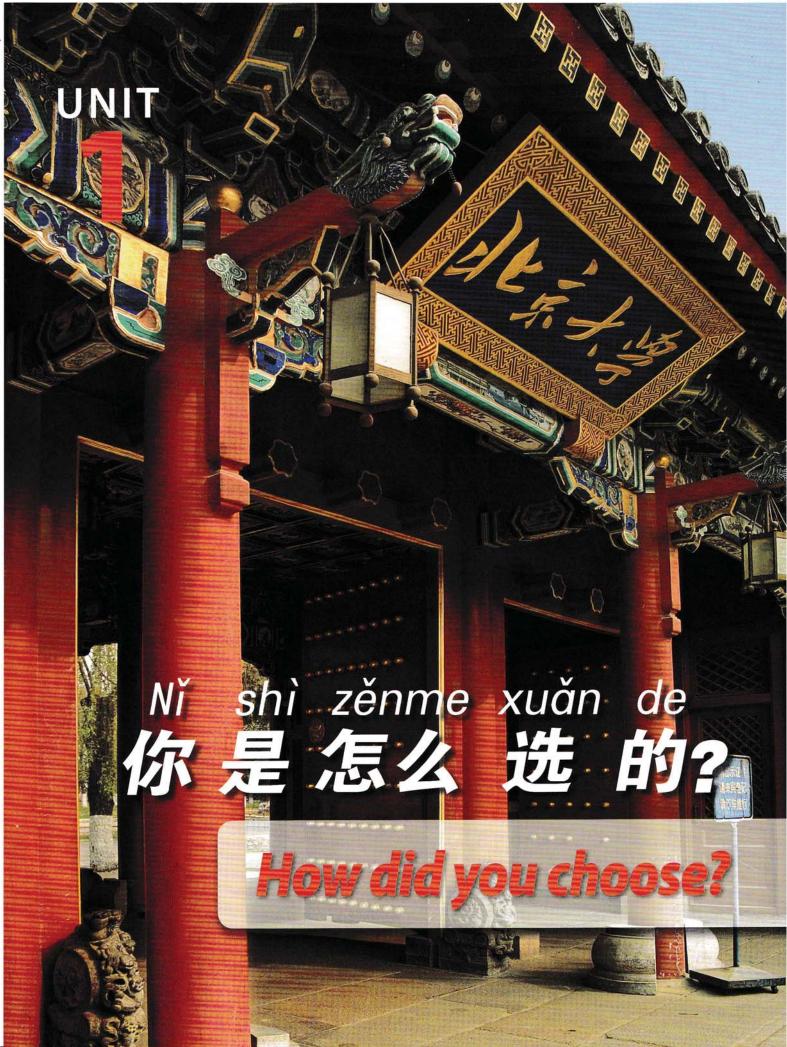
Wáng Yù
Wang Yu (王 玉) was born in
Beijing. She knows the others from
university, where she studies music.
She has played the piano since
she was five. She likes cooking and
sports including swimming and
tennis.





Jīn Yŏngmín

Kim Yeong-min (全 永民) is also studying Chinese at the university. He comes from Seoul. Like Wang Yu, Yeong-min is a musician, and plays guitar in a local band. He plans to study Chinese medicine after he finishes his courses in Chinese. Yeong-min likes to spend his free time reading and listening to music.



# LESSON 1

# Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Look at the photos for Chinese culture classes. Which class would interest you?





a

b





C

d

- 1-4
- Amanda is asking Mark about her courses. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 阿曼达要选文化课还是语言课?
  - 2 马克建议阿曼达怎么选课?
  - 3 阿曼达最后决定选什么课了?

阿曼达: 马克, 选修课这么多, 我决定 不了。你去年是怎么选的?

马克: 我是根据自己的兴趣爱好选的课。我喜欢中国功夫,所以选了武术课。

阿曼达: 听起来挺有意思的, 选一些 中国文化课不错。我以前上 的都是语言课。

马克:就是啊。离开中国以后, 有些东西你可能就没有机 会学习了。你想不想选书 法课?

阿曼达: 我还没想好。听说挺难的, 而且学好书法得花好长时 间。再说,我觉得我还是学 点更有用的东西吧, 比方说 商务写作什么的。

马克: 商务写作确实很有用,就是没什么意思。你不是喜欢历史吗,你可以选中国历史呀。

阿曼达: 不会太难吗? 是不是要用到 很多很难的词?

马克:这门历史课比较简单,别担心。当然,上课得用中文。 不过这对提高中文水平也有 好处啊。

阿曼达: 你知道这门课的老师怎么 样吗?



马克: 听说很不错! 那位老师 姓黄, 他对学生特别有 耐心。

阿曼达: 黄老师说话快不快? 用的词难不难?

马克: 不快也不难。我听朋友 说大多数时候都能听

懂。而且要是有不懂的 地方,下课以后还可以

问老师。

阿曼达: 听起来挺不错的! 那我还是选中国历史吧。你知道怎么报名吗?

马克: 你去留学生办公室填个 表就行了。

生词 Ne	w words	1 1/2	1/-
xuǎn 选	elect, choose	zàishuō 再说	in addition
xuǎnxiūkè 选修课 gēnjù	elective course	bǐfang shuō 比方 说 shāngwù xiězuò	for example
根据 àihào	according to	商务 写作 quèshí	business writing
爱好 gōngfu	preference, hobby	确实 jiǎndān	indeed
功夫 wǔshù	kung fu	简单 dānxīn	simple, easy
武术 tīng qǐlai	martial arts	担心 tígāo	worry
tĭng	sounds like	提高 shuǐpíng	improve
挺 yǒuyìsi 七辛田	very, rather	水平 hǎochu	level
有意思 wénhuà 文化	interesting	好处 nàixīn 耐心	benefit patience
文化 yǔyán 语言	language	dàduōshù 大多数	patience
jīhuì 机会	opportunity	大夕奴 shíhou 时候	most of the time
shūfǎ 书法	calligraphy	bàomíng 报名	register,
děi 得	have to	bàngōngshì 办公室	enter for office
huā 花	spend		

#### Complete the passage.

马克	江对			. 感)	兴趣	,	所以	去生	年他	选	了
) <u>—</u>		课。	3n	[曼边	5开	始	想选	8		_ 2	号
作,	因为	的比较	ξ_		0	最	后阿	曼	达决	定证	先
		课,	可是	是她拒	心上	:课	听不	董。	马克	告i	斥
阿曼	达没	有关	系,	因为	那个	之	如特	别			_0

#### Choose the best answer to complete the sentences.

- 1 阿曼达不想选书法课,因为觉得这门 课\_\_\_\_。
  - a 很花时间 b 很有用 c 很简单
- 2 马克听说中国历史课的老师 \_\_\_\_。
  - a 用词很难 b 没有耐心 c 说话不快
- 3 选修课的报名方式是 \_\_\_\_。
  - a 在网上填表
  - b 去留学生办公室告诉老师
  - c 去留学牛办公室填表

- Some students are talking about their choices of classes. Listen and put the names of the classes in the order you hear them.
  - □ 武术
- □ 书法
- □ 写作
- □ 中国音乐史 □ 中国文化

Now listen again and match the students with the classes they choose and their reasons.

同学一 同学二

同学三

- 1 中国音乐史
- 2 武术
- 3 书法
- 4 中国文化
- a 听不懂也能 上,有意思
- b感兴趣
- c很有用
- d 很简单,没 有考试

## Pronunciation and speaking



Listen to the sentences. Notice how the tone of each sentence is changed by the underlined word.

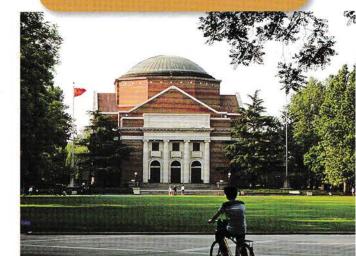
1 书法课特别难!

	14177 PK 14 7/1/1/1	
2	武术课挺有意思的。	
3	历史课很容易!	
4	写作课真的太难了!	
5	音乐课还不错。	

Now number the sentences according to how weak (1) or strong (5) the tones are.

- Work in pairs. Talk about your own classes using the underlined words in Activity 1.
- Work in pairs. Discuss the classes you plan to take next year. Say:
  - · how they are difficult for you;
  - · why you want to take them.

#### CHINESE TO GO Making decisions 1-7 Jiù shì a 就是啊。 Absolutely. Wǒ hái méi xiảng hảo I haven't 我还没想好。 decided yet. Nà wǒ hái shì 那我还是…… I'll (take) ... then.



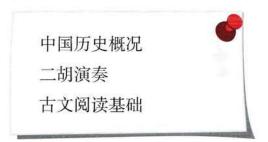
# LESSON 2

# Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Look at the assessment of Business Writing and fill in a similar assessment for your Chinese class.

商务写作	商务写作课				
考试	40%				
作业	15%				
作文	15%				
小考	10%				
课堂表现	10%				
其他	10%				

Work in pairs. You're going to read about some courses at Amanda's university. Look at the names and talk about which course you'd like to take.



Now talk about the challenges for you in taking the courses. Use the words below to help you.

时间	语言	文化
要求	爱好	考试

要学好二胡演奏很花时间。

Work in pairs. Write down words you know about these Chinese dynasties.

秦朝	秦始皇
汉朝	
三国	
唐朝	唐三彩
明朝	
清朝	中国最后一个皇帝

Now discuss what you'd like to learn from a Chinese history class.



- Read the course descriptions on page 20 and check the true statements.
  - □ 1 中国历史概况课有小组作业。
  - □ 2 要上古文阅读基础课,学生只需要掌握300个汉字。
  - □ 3 上完古文阅读基础课,学生将可以阅读大多数的古文文章。
  - □ 4 二胡演奏课只根据期末考试成绩进行 评估。



目的: 简单介绍中国历史, 为学生以后进一步学习中国

历史打好基础。

内容: 1. 中国历史的基本发展过程

2. 重点介绍明、清两个朝代

考试:50% 作业:30%

课堂讨论:10%

小组作业:10%



二胡是一种传统的中国乐器。学生将学习有关二胡 的基本知识和演奏方法。学生每周上两次课,每次两小 时。将根据学生的平时表现和期末考试成绩进行评估。

演奏+口试:85% 平时表现:15%

古文阅读基础

要求: 学生已经掌握500-800个汉字, 中文水平在中级

以上。

目的:初步了解古代汉语。学生将学习基本的古代汉语语

法,了解古代汉语和现代汉语的基本区别。课程结

束时, 学生将可以使用工具书阅读简单的古文。

考试:70% 作业:30%

#### 生词 New words

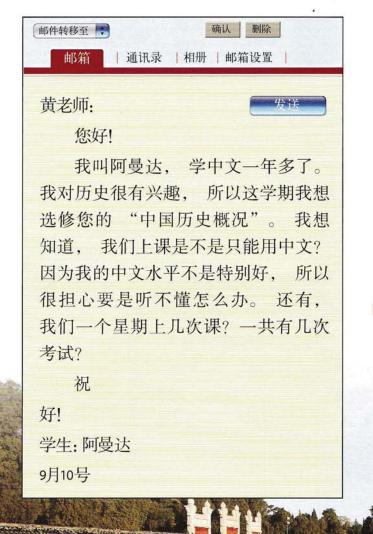
míngchēng		èrhú		yāoqiú	
名称	name	二胡	erhu	要求	requirement
pínggū		yănzòu		zhăngwò	
评估	assess	演奏	play	掌握	master
fāngfă		chuántŏng		hànzì	
方法	method	传统	traditional	汉字	Chinese character
gàikuàng		yuèqì		zhōngjí	
概况	general introduction	乐器	musical instrument	中级	intermediate
mùdì		yŏuguān		chūbù	
目的	purpose	有关	related	初步	preliminary
jīchǔ		zhīshi		gŭdài	
基础	foundation	知识	knowledge	古代	ancient
nèiróng		píngshí biǎoxiàn		yŭfă	
内容	content	平时 表现	regular class performance	语法	grammar
jīběn		qīmò		xiàndài	
基本	basic	期末	end of the semester	现代	modern
fāzhǎn		chéngjì		qūbié	
发展	develop	成绩	result (of a test)	区别	difference
guòchéng		jìnxíng		jiéshù	
过程	process	进行	undergo	结束	end
zhòngdiǎn		kŏushì		shĭyòng	
重点	emphasis	口试	oral test	使用	make use of
kètáng tǎolùn		gŭwén		gōngjùshū	distinguis
课堂讨论	classroom discussion	古文	classical Chinese	工具书	dictionary, reference book
xiǎozǔ		yuèdú			
小组	group	阅读	read		

#### Answer the questions.

- 1 中国历史概况课重点介绍哪些朝代?
- 2 二胡演奏课每周上几次课? 有没有作业?
- 3 哪门选修课没有笔试?
- 4 上完古文阅读基础课,学生应该可以做什么?

#### 6 Read the email and answer the questions.

- 1 邮件是写给谁的?
- 2 阿曼达想要了解哪三件事?



#### Match the words to make phrases.

1学习

a 工具书

2 进行

b评估

3 打

c知识

4 使用

d 基础

Now make sentences with these phrases.

#### Write a reply to the email in Activity 6. Say:

- the class meets three times a week, one hour each time
- · there will be five tests in total
- students can ask the instructor to slow down and repeat things in class
- students can always meet the instructor after class



Choose another course on page 20 and write an email asking for more details.



# Language in use

Talking about results using resultative complements

#### Look at the sentences.

Other	Subject	Verb	Resultative complement	Other
	你	想	好	选什么课了吗?
老师说的话,	阿曼达	没听	懂。	
学钢琴,	你	一定要打	好	基础。
	朋友们	吃	完了	我做的麻婆豆腐。
	他们	决定	好	假期去什 么地方玩 了吗?

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 The resultative complement always appears right after the verb.
  - Negation of the resultative complement is formed by 没 + verb + complement.
  - The resultative complement often appears together with 7, indicating the action is finished.
  - 4 The object of the verb always appears after the resultative complement.

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 What did she say just now? I did not understand.
- I haven't decided which electives to take.
- 3 Haven't you finished your homework?
- 4 It is very important to lay a good foundation for learning Chinese.

Have you finished reading this book?

Talking about the future using





#### Look at the sentences.

Other	Subject	会/将	Verb phrase
多年以后,	我们	将	在中国见面。
学完这门课,	学生	将	掌握书法的 基础知识。
近期	美国总统	将	访问中国。
今年 夏天,	永民	会	去中国南方。
毕业 以后,	史蒂夫	会	留在中国工作。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 将 is more formal than 会.
- Both 将 and 会 are auxiliary verbs indicating what will happen in the future.
  - 3 將 and 会 are interchangeable

# 2 Complete the sentences with 18 or 会.

毕业以后,我

学了两年中文以后, 学生们

3 你给黄老师写信,黄老师

Giving extra information using

再说 🚾 而且

Expressing preferences using

还是……吧

#### Look at the sentences.

Clause 1	再说/ 而且	Clause 2
学古文可以提 高中文水平,	再说,	对我的学术研 究也有帮助。
这个纪念品很有北京特色,	而且	价钱也不贵。
学习二胡可以了 解中国文化,	再说,	你也很喜欢音乐。
这个中国电影 很有意思,	而且,	中文水平不高也能听懂。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 Both 再说 and 而且 are conjunctives used to supply additional information, in order to convince other people to do something.
- □ 2 再说/而且 may appear before either of the two clauses.
- [] 3 再说/而且 are interchangeable in this context.
- **2** Complete the conversations using 再说 or 而且.
  - \* 你为什么觉得我应该选英文商务写作 课?
  - 2 A: 我决定不了暑假是工作还是去学中文。
  - 3 A. 周末我们做什么?

#### II Look at the sentences.

Other	Subject	还是	Verb phrase	吧
这学期	你	还是	选一门历 史课	吧。
假期	我	还是	留在北京 学习	吧。
给家人 买东西,	我们	还是	先去附 近的商 店看看	吧。
这个问 题我不 懂,	你们	还是	问问别人	吧。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 还是·····吧 is used to express the preferred choice or suggestion of the speaker.
- 2 还是……吧 is used to express the speaker's firmness about his/her preferred choice.
- 3 还是 is placed before the verb phrase and 吧 always appears at the end of the sentence.

## 2 Translate the sentences into Chinese using

- I'd better talk to my mother about this matter first.
- 2 You'd better register for this course soon, because there are many people who are interested in it.
- 3 I am worried that the test will be too difficult.
  - You'd better email the professor.
- Turn to page 184 for grammar reference.

# LESSON 3

# Communication activity

Write an introduction to a course you are going to teach to the local Chinese community.



- 2 Work in groups. Put together all courses you can teach. Interview each other to elicit more details about the courses.
- Make a brochure of your courses.

Now show it to the whole class and vote for the best one.



Turn to pages 172 and 178 for more speaking practice.

# Review and practice

Complete the passage with the words in the box.

听起来	课堂讨论	平时表现	*
语言	了解	重点	好处
选修	简单	耐心	

从今年开始, 我们学校的学生可以
中文课了。学中文 很有
意思,可是学好中文不。中文是
一种很难学的, 初学者常常觉得
汉字和发音特别难,可是只要有,
一定可以学好。如果你有一个说中文的
朋友,可以常常跟你说中文,对提高你的
中文水平会有很大的。初级中文
课, 是打好基础,上课的时候
一定要多听、多说; 中级中文课, 会进
行很多,除了学习语言,还可以
很多中国的文化。除了期末考
试,也很重要。

#### Cultural corner

# Chinese calligraphy

Chinese calligraphy became popular during the Qin Dynasty. It is regarded as a form of high art and, alongside painting and poetry, is referred to as one of the "Three Perfections" (三绝:诗,书,圃). Chinese calligraphy is not merely a practical method of writing characters but a highly disciplined practice that incorporates stylized movement, rhythm and expression. Calligraphy is painstaking work, and apprentices of the art form often study for many years before they learn to master the intricate

techniques. Basic calligraphy instruction is also part of the Chinese school curriculum. The tools and materials used in Chinese calligraphy are of great importance to the finished work; the ink brush 笔, ink 墨, paper 纸, and ink-stone 砚 are traditional implements known collectively as the "Four Treasures of the Study" (文房四宝). Chinese calligraphy has also been of interest to Western artists, Picasso and Matisse both citing the art form as influencing their work.

#### Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 作业我还 \_\_\_\_\_, 所以不能跟你出去 玩。
  - a 没有做完 b 不做完 c 做完了
- 2 今年我 \_\_\_\_\_ 选修书法课吧!
  - a 但是 b 还是 c 可是
- 3 听说期末考试非常难, 考试的 时间也很长。
  - a 和
- **b** 而目 **c** 也
- 4 你还是 \_\_\_\_\_ 自己的兴趣爱好来选 课吧。
- a 根据 b 为 c 因为
- 5 我的法语水平不错, 所以大多数时候都 能。

  - a 听懂 b 没听懂 c 听不懂

#### Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

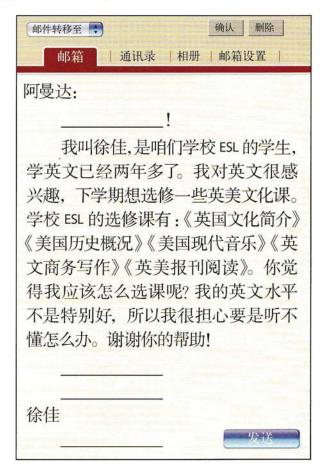
- 1 进行学术研究非常难, 你得掌握基础知 识, \_\_\_\_\_。(而且)
- 2 你 \_\_\_\_\_。我觉得你的中 文水平不够。(还是……吧)
- 3 十年以后, \_\_\_\_\_。(将)
- 4 等你 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, 请把你的决 定告诉我。(v+好)



#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 To learn a foreign language, you need to be very patient.
- 2 Playing basic erhu is quite easy.
- 3 Do you know how to use reference books to read classical Chinese?
- 4 The teacher will evaluate students' Chinese proficiency based on the final exam.
- 5 When the semester is over, you will know a lot about the history of the Ming Dynasty.

#### Read and complete the email.



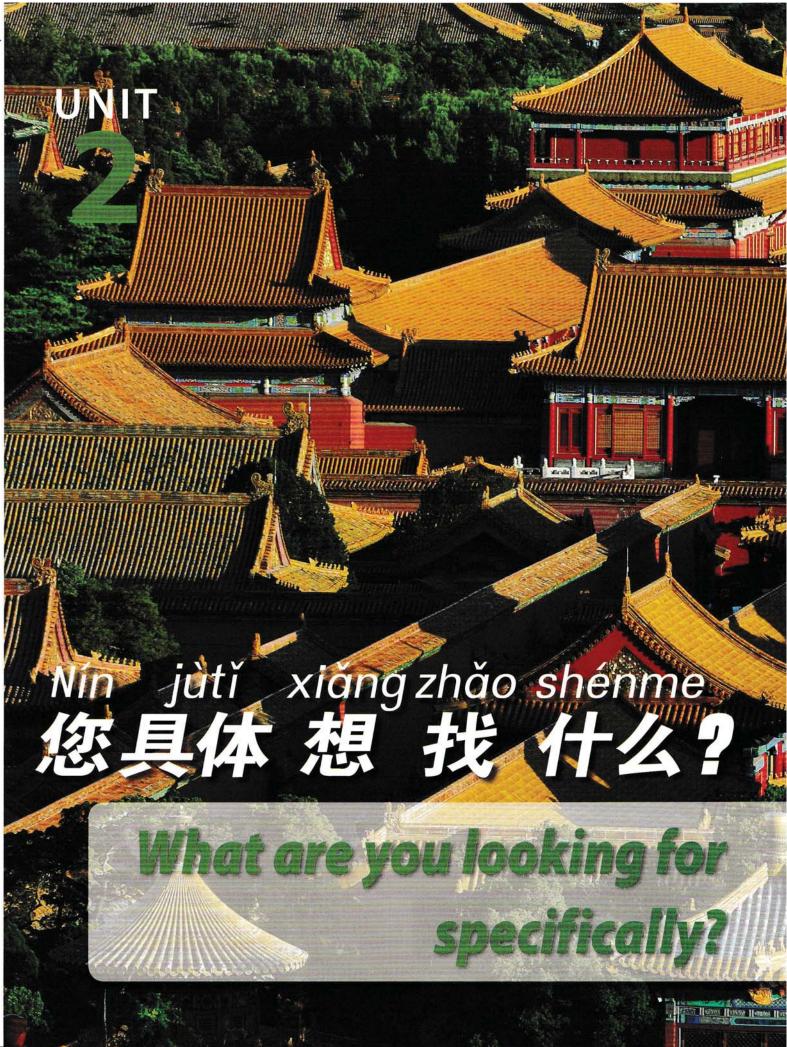
#### Now answer the questions.

- 1 这个学生叫什么名字?
- 2 她学英文多长时间了? 英文水平怎么样?
- 3 学校有什么ESL的洗修课?
- 4 你觉得哪门选修课最有用?
- Write a reply to the email in Activity 5 and give your advice.

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

爱好	àihào	n.		耐心	nàixīn	n.	
办公室	bàngōngshì	n.	office		nèiróng	n.	content
报名	bàomíng	v.		评估	pínggū	v.	assess
比方说	bǐfang shuō		for example	平时表现	píngshí biǎoxià	n	regular class performance
成绩	chéngjì	n.	result (of a test)	期末	qīmò	n.	end of the
初步	chūbù	adj.	preliminary				semester
传统	chuántŏng	adj.	traditional	区别	qūbié	n.	ALCO PERSON PE
大多数时候	É dàduōshù shího	ou	most of the time	—— ———————————————————————————————————	quèshí	adv.	indeed business
<u></u> -V	dānxīn	v.	worry about	商务写作	shāngwù xiězu	ò	writing
得	děi	v.	have to	使用	shĭyòng	v.	
二胡	èrhú	n.	erhu	书法	shūfǎ	n.	calligraphy
	fāzhǎn	v.	develop		shuĭpíng	n.	level
方法	fāngfă	n.	-		tígāo	v.	improve
概况	gàikuàng	n.	general introduction	听起来	tīng qĭlai		sounds like
	gēnjù	prep.	according to	挺	tĭng	adv.	
功夫	gōngfu	n.	kung fu		wénhuà	n.	culture
			dictionary,	武术	wŭshù	n.	martial arts
工具书	gōngjùshū	n.	reference book		xiàndài	n.	modern
古代	gŭdài	adj.	ancient	小组	xiǎozǔ	n.	group
古文	gŭwén	n.	classical	选	xuăn	v.	<del></del>
And the same			Chinese	选修课	xuǎnxiūkè	n.	-
过程	guòchéng	n.	 Chinese	演奏	yǎnzòu	V.	play
汉字	hànzì	n.	character		yāoqiú	n.	requirement
	hǎochu	n.	benefit	有关	yŏuguān	V.	be related
花	huā	v.		有意思	yŏuyìsi		interesting
基本	jīběn	adj.		语法	yŭfă	n.	grammar
	jīchǔ	n.	foundation	.——	yŭyán	n.	language
	jīhuì	n.	opportunity	阅读	yuèdú	V.	
简单	jiǎndān	adj.		乐器	yuèqì	n.	musical instrument
	jiéshù	V.	end	再说	zàishuō	conj.	in addition
进行	jìnxíng	V.	undergo	学握	zhăngwò	v.	madaman
课堂讨论	kètáng tǎolùn		classroom discussion	知识	zhīshi	n.	knowledge
口试	kŏushì	v.	oral test	中级	zhōngjí	adj.	intermediate
名称	míngchēng	n.	name	25.0	zhòngdiǎn	n.	emphasis
server install	mùdì	n.	purpose				



# LESSON 1

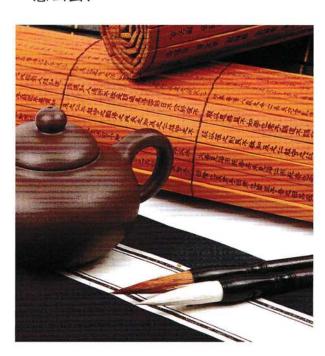
# Vocabulary and listening

Look at the words on the left and work out the meaning of those on the right.

楼梯 stairs	电梯
复印 to make a copy	复印机
期刊 periodicals	期刊室
还 return	还书



- Amanda is talking to the school librarian. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 阿曼达要找什么方面的书?
  - 2 图书管理员推荐了哪两本经典的中国历史书籍?
  - 3 阿曼达想找哪个朝代的书?
  - 4 阿曼达要找的书在图书馆什么地方, 怎么去?





图书管理员:您好!需要帮忙吗? 阿曼达:您好。我要还两本书,还想找几本中国历史方面的书。

图书管理员:好的。历史书在三

层。您具体想找什么书?

阿曼达: 我这学期有门中国历史 课, 您能不能给我推荐几本比 较经典的中国历史书籍?

图书管理员:经典的历史书籍,比如《史记》和《三国志》。

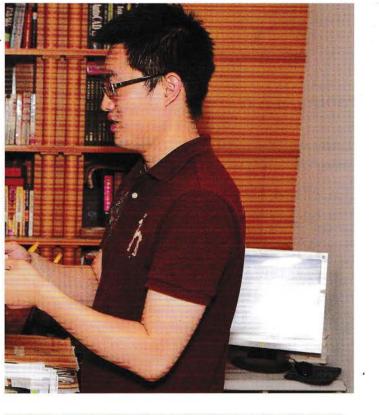
《史记》的作者是汉朝的司马 迁,《三国志》的作者是西晋 的陈寿。我们这里都有。

阿曼达: 这两本书都是用古文写的吗?

图书管理员:是的,而且都很厚。这两本书对中国人来说都挺难读懂。

阿曼达:那对我来说可能太难了。

有没有用现代汉语写的历史



书,关于明朝和清朝的? 图书管理员:有很多。跟明朝有 关的书在三层第150架,跟 清朝有关的书在第152架。

阿曼达:另外,有没有介绍中 国历史概况的书?比较简 单的那种。

图书管理员:有。您等一下。在 第148架。您去看一看,应 该能找到合适的。

阿曼达:谢谢您。我应该怎么走?

图书管理员:坐电梯比较方便。看到那个复印机了吗?电梯就在复印机的右边。坐电梯到三层,出了电梯左转。经过期刊室,就看到中国历史

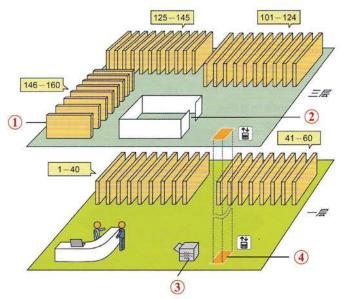
阿曼达:非常感谢!

类书籍了。

#### 生词 New words

túshū guǎnlǐyuár 图书管理员		Xī Jìn 西晋	West Jin
bāngmáng		Chén Shòu	Dynasty
帮忙	help	陈寿	Chen Shou
huán		hòu	
还	return	厚	thick
fāngmiàn		duì ··· láishuð	5
方面	area, aspect	对来说	(someone)
jùtĭ		guānyú	(SOTTICOTIC)
具体	specifical	关于	about
tuījiàn		céng	
推荐	recommend	层	floor
jīngdiǎn		jià	
经典	classical	架	rack
shūjí		héshì	
书籍	books	合适	suitable
bĭrú		diàntī	
比如	take for example	电梯	elevator, lift
Shĭjì		fùyìn jī	
《史记》	Records of the	复印机	photocopier
Sānguózhì .	Grand Historian	zuŏ zhuăn	
《三国志》	Records of the	左转	turn left
zuòzhě	Three Kingdoms	jīngguò	
作者	author	经过	pass by
作名 Hàncháo	author	qīkānshì	periodical
汉朝	Han Dynasty	期刊室	reading
Mark Const. Mark	Han Dynasty		room
Sīmǎ Qiān 司马迁	Sima Qian	lèi 类	kind, genre

### Look at the map of the library. Label the places mentioned by the librarian.



#### 4 Check the correct statements.

- □ 1《史记》是明朝人写的。
- □ 2《三国志》是用古文写的。
- □ 3 复印机在电梯旁边。
- □ 4期刊室在图书馆的二层。
- □ 5 跟清朝有关的书在第150架。

Now correct the false information.



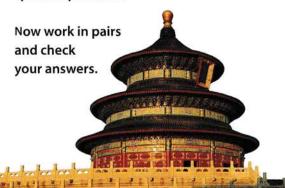
You are going to hear some people asking for information. Look at the topics in the table and predict where these conversations take place.

	Topic	Location	Specific question
1	火车票	售票处	买三张后天去 北京的火车票
2	选修课		
3	书籍		
4	服装		
5	登机口		
6	展览		

Now listen and check. Complete the column of location.



Listen again and complete the table with the specific questions.



30 Unit 2 Lesson L

# Pronunciation and speaking



- Listen to the following sentences. Notice the different pronunciations of the underlined characters.
  - 1 a 我要还两本书。
    - b 你还有什么问题吗?
  - 2 a 学好书法得花好长时间。
    - b 你吃饭吃得真快!
    - c 医生, 我得了什么病?
  - 3 a 出了电梯左转,就到了。
    - b 明天我想去附近的小市场转一转。

Now listen again and repeat.



- Read the sentences aloud.
  - 1 你什么时候还我的钱?
  - 2 我得告诉老师我明天不能去上课。
  - 3 出了宿舍门右转,走路五分钟就能看到一个复印店。
  - 4 老师说话这么快, 你听得懂吗?

Now listen and check.

#### **B** Work in pairs.

- Student A: You're in your school library. Ask Student B where to return books and where to find particular books.
- Students B: You're a school librarian. Answer Student A's questions about your library. Draw a map if necessary.

# CHINESE TO GO Offering help

Nín jùtǐ xiǎng zhǎo shénme 您具体 想 找 什么?

What are you looking for specifically? Qing děng yixià

请等一下。

Please give me a moment.

bĭjiào fāngbiàn

……比较 方便。

It's easiest to ...

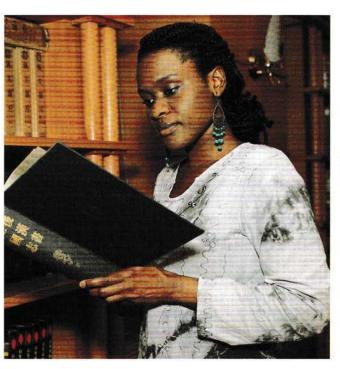
# LESSON 2

# Reading and writing

**Work in pairs. Find out the Chinese words for:** 

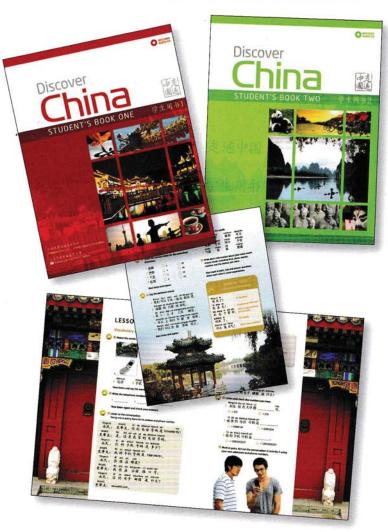
tradition	
daily life	.ex
religion	
philosophy	
art	
law	-
history	
war	

Now choose one of the topics and talk about China.



■ Work in pairs. Talk about the features you like in a textbook. You can think about *Discover China*. Use the words below to help you.

> 内容 图片 文字 初学者<sub>.</sub> 入门 吸引人 要求





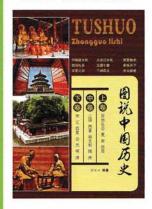
- Read the first online book review on page 32 and check the true statements.
  - □ 1 这本书的作者姓刘。
  - □ 2 这是一本介绍现代中国历史的教材。
  - □ 3 写书评的人认为,这本书对初学者来说 太简单了。
  - □ 4 这本书里有史前文化的介绍。
  - □ 5 写书评的人不推荐这本书。



刘博士的这本书很适合作中国历史的入门教材。 内容从史前文化开始,到各个朝代的更替,一直到20 世纪的中国现代历史都有介绍。优点是文字简单,内 容丰富,适合初学者。缺点是现代史部分的内容太 少,要是你对现代史特别感兴趣,这本书恐怕不太 合适。

#### 书评二

\*\*\*\* 2012-08-05 15:36:00



我很喜欢这本《图说中国历史》。当时买这本书只是想简单了解一下中国历史,没想到我一看就入了迷,很快就看完了。这本书的重点不是各个朝代的皇帝,也不是战争故事,而是中国传统文化方面的内容,有哲学、宗教、艺术、法律,还有普通人的生活。书里的图片非常吸引人。对中国历史的初学者来说,这本书非常合适。如果你对某个方面特别感兴趣,你还可以看看书后的推荐书目。当然,要是你要求比较高,可能会觉得这本书的内容太简单了。可是如果你跟我一样,中国历史刚入门,我强烈推荐这本《图说中国历史》。



Read the second book review and answer the questions.



Read the first book reivew again and answer the questions in Activity 4.

- 1 这本书的名字是什么?
- 2 这本书的内容是什么?
- 3 这本书的优点是什么?缺点是什么?
- 4 这本书适合什么样的人?



读书搜索

#### 生词 New words

wăngluò		wén zì		zhéxué	
网络	Internet	文字	wording, writing	哲学	philosophy
shūping		fēngfù		zōngjiào	
书评	book review	丰富	rich	宗教	religion
rùmén		chūxuézhě		yìshù	
入门	primer	初学者	beginner	艺术	art
bóshì		quēdiǎn		fălù	
博士	PhD	缺点	shortcoming, weakness	法律	law
shìhé		kŏngpà	WCdK1C33	túpiàn	
适合	suit	恐怕	for fear of	图片	picture, illustration
iàocái		túshuō		xīyĭn rén	mastration
教材	textbook	图说	illustrated book	吸引人	attractive
shǐqián		rùmí		mŏu	
史前	prehistory	入迷 '	be fascinated by, fall for	某	certain, some
gēngtì		huángdì	Idii IOI	shūmù	
更替	replacement	皇帝	emperor	书目	references
yìzhí		zhànzhēng		yàoshì	
一直	all along	战争	war	要是	if
shìjì		bùshì ···		qiángliè	
世纪	century	不是		强烈	strong, intense
yōudiǎn		érshì ···	not but , instead		
优点	strong point, merit	而是			

- Look at these sentences from the second book review. Write the questions.
  - 1 这本书的重点不是各个朝代的更替,也不是 战争故事,而是中国传统文化方面的内容, 有哲学、宗教、艺术、法律,还有普通人的 生活。
  - 2 书里的图片非常吸引人。

- ☑ Think about your favourite textbook this year, and write answers to the questions in Activity 6.
- Write a book review of your favourite textbook. Use the answers to the questions you wrote in Activity 7 and the book reviews on page 32 to help you.



# Language in use

Limiting the range of statements using

对……来说

#### Look at the sentences.

对	Someone	来说,	Clause
对	我	来说,	学二胡太难了。
对	阿曼达	来说,	商务写作很有用。
对	初学者	来说,	打好基础最重要。
对	美国人	来说,	夏天喝热茶很 奇怪。
对	历史刚入 门的人	来说,	这本书非常合适。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 The translation of 对······来说 is roughly "to someone" or "for someone".
- 2 The statement in the main clause is only applicable to a certain person (or certain people).
- 3 It is used to express someone's opinion.

#### 2 Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- Christmas is not an important day to most Chinese.
- Learning classical Chinese is too difficult for beginners.
- 3 For me, this is the best choice.
- 4 The elective is suitable for people who have learntChinese for two years.
- 5 It means a lot to Amanda if she can study Chinese history in the Chinese language.

Emphasizing facts and negating assumptions using 不是…… 而是……

#### Look at the sentences.

Topic	不是	而是
我想学的专业,	不是历史,	而是法律。
这个戏的 重点,	不是故事,	而是音乐。
他最喜欢的 中国城市,	不是北京、上海,	而是昆明这 样风景秀丽 的地方。
她选择去中国留学,	不是因为她 想以后在中 国工作,	而是因为她 想了解中国 的文化。
我不喜欢 这门课,	不是因为上 课我听不懂,	而是因为作 业太多了。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 The expression is used to emphasize what appears after 而是.
  - What appears after 不是 is a wrong assumption.
  - 3 It means "not only... but also..."

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 她决定放假的时候去成都,不是因为成都天气好,而是。
- 2 我不买这件衣服,不是\_ 而是
- 3 他生病,不是\_\_

,而

Expressing surprise using

没想到

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	没想到	Clause
	没想到	桂林的山水这么美!
	没想到	学中文的学生这么多!
马克	没想到	凯特这么漂亮!
永民	没想到	火车站人这么多!
	没想到	你也选了这门课!

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 When the subject is 我, you can drop the subject and start the sentence with 没想到.
- 2 It is used to express the subject's surprise about a certain matter.
- □ 3 没想到 is always used with 这么.
- Complete the sentences.
  - 我以为你家很小,没想到

他来维约以前、我觉得维约~定非常现代 化,没想到\_\_\_\_。

- 3 十年以前, 很多人没想到
- 4 他以为上大学比上高中轻松,可是他没想到

Making recommendations using

给……推荐

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	给	Someone	推荐	Object
图书管 理员	给	我	推荐了	这本书。
麻烦你	给	我们	推荐一下	附近好吃的饭馆。
请黄教 授	给	大家	推荐	有关的书籍。
王玉	给	永民	推荐了	一个中文 老师。

#### Now check two correct explanations.

- □ 1 给·····推荐 means "recommend something to someone".
- □ 2 What appears after 推荐 is usually a noun phrase.
  - 3 What appears after 推荐 is usually a verb phrase.

## Work in pairs.

- following using 给……推荐.
  - 1 学校附近比较好的书店
  - 2 学校午餐最好吃的菜
  - 3 最有意思的选修课
  - 4 今年的好电影
  - 5 艺术博物馆
  - Answer Student A's questions using 我推荐……
    - Turn to page 185 for grammar reference.

# Communication activity

Work in pairs. Use the map on page 29 to role-play a conversation between a librarian and a visitor.

**Student A:** You are a visitor to the library. Ask Student B where to find the following books:

- •《图解中国功夫》
- •《三国志》
- •《二胡演奏入门》

**Student B:** You are the librarian. Answer Student A's questions and tell him/her how to get to the books.

- 武术类书籍在第105架
- 经典历史书籍在第146架
- 乐器演奏类书籍在第37架

Now change roles.



Turn to pages 172 and 178 for more speaking practice.

## Review and practice

Complete the sentences with the correct words.

1	我喜欢坐火车_	因	为火车比飞机
	快,	为火车比	飞机舒服。
	a 不但; 而且 b	不是;但是	c 不是; 而是
2	教材我还	,可是明	天就要考试了!
	a 没想到 b i	<b>没看完</b>	c没听懂
3	他来说	点, 这门课:	最大的优点就是
	简单。		
	a 给 b )	付	c 跟
4	要是你想学习中	国哲学, 何	尔得阅读很多
	中国历	史有关的书	<b>·</b> 籍。
	a 给 b 为	付	c 跟
5	麻烦你	我们推荐-	一些法律方面的
	书籍。		
	a 给 b ɔ́	付	c 跟
6	这个英文故事文	字很简单,	故事很有意

## Cultural corner

## Sun Wu and The Art of War

Sun Wu was a great military strategist and philosopher who lived sometime during the tumultuous Spring and Autumn and Warring States periods (770BC – 221BC) of Chinese history. Sun Wu is believed to be the author of the famous book *The Art of War*, arguably one of the most important military treatises ever produced. The book is comprised of thirteen chapters, each one dedicated to a different aspect of warfare, from military combat to intelligence and espionage. The wisdom of Sun

Wu has influenced military strategy both in Asia and in the West, with leaders as diverse as Napoleon, Ho Chi Minh and Mao Zedong said to have read the book. It has enjoyed worldwide influence not only in the military, but also in other fields such as intelligence, diplomacy, and even business operations. The Art of War has become deeply rooted in Chinese culture. For example, Chinese people often quote 知己知彼,百战不殆,meaning "Know the enemy and know yourself, and you will never lose a battle".

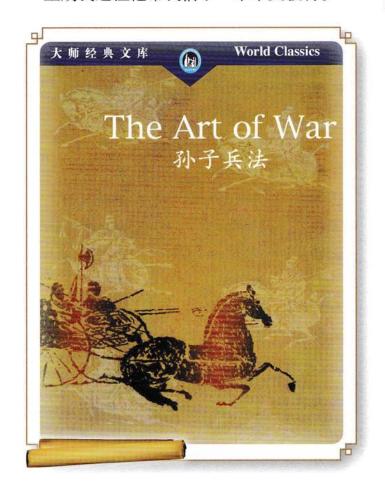
思, \_\_\_\_\_\_初学者。

a 适合 b 合适 c 当然

#### Read the passage and check the true statements.

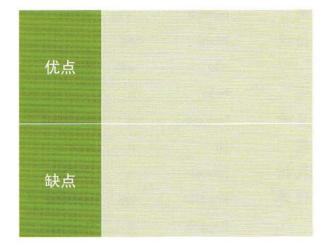
我们学校的图书馆很小,没有电梯,因为只有两层。第一层是阅览室,有几台电脑,还有一些报纸。第二层有很多教材,有历史类、文学类、艺术类的,还有数学类的,可是没有哲学和法律方面的书。我不喜欢我们学校的图书馆,不是因为图书馆太小,而是因为图书馆里没有我喜欢的书。

我的好朋友在另外一个学校。他们的图书馆就好多了,有四层楼高,当然有电梯;他们的书很多,电脑也都很新。我第一次去的时候,没想到还可以在那儿借DVD看电影!我常常去找我的好朋友,让他带我进他们的图书馆。上个星期我还让他帮我借了一本中文教材。



- □ 1 我们学校的图书馆没有电梯,因为只有一层楼高。
  □ 2 我们学校的图书馆里有报纸。
  □ 3 我们学校的图书馆没有艺术教材。
  □ 4 我不喜欢我们学校的图书馆,是因为它太小了。
  □ 5 我好朋友学校的图书馆比我们学校的大。
  □ 6 我不能自己进入朋友学校的图书馆。
  □ 7 我朋友学校的图书馆可以借DVD看电影。
- Work in pairs. Complete the table with pros and cons of the library at your school.

□ 8 他们的图书馆还有中文教材。



#### Now write a letter to your library.

- Say what is good about the library and express your appreciation.
- Say in what areas the library could improve.

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

	bāngmáng	v.	help	<b>:</b> λ	·门	rùmén	راً rùmén <i>n.</i>
比如	bĭrú	v.	takefor	入迷		rùmí	55. 8
			example				
博士	bóshì	n.	3	史前		shǐqián	NA
不是 而是	bùshìérshì		not but, instead	:		shìhé	
而疋		measu		<u> </u>	S	hìjì	hìjì <i>n</i> .
<del></del> :	céng	word	<sup>re</sup> floor	书籍	shi	ūjí	ūjí <i>n.</i>
初学者	chūxuézhě	n.	beginner	书目	shūn	nù	nù <i>n.</i>
电梯	diàntī	n.		书评	shūpí	ng	ng <i>n</i> .
吋 来说	duìláishuō		to/for (someone)	图片	túpiàn		
法律	fălù	n.		图书管理	页 túshū guờ	ánlĭyu	ánlĭyuán
X1+				图说	túshuō		n.
	fāngmiàn	n.	area, aspect	推荐	tuījiàn		v.
	fēngfù	adj.	rich	网络·	wăngluò		n.
印机	fùyìnjī	n.		文字	wénzì		n.
更替	gēngtì	v.	replacement	吸引人	xīyĭn rén		
も チェ	guānyú	prep.	about	要是	yàoshì		conj.
适.	héshì	adj.		优点	yōudiăn		n.
	hòu	adj.	thick	:	yìshù		n.
<u>.</u>	huán	v.		:	yìzhí		adv.
.帝	huángdì jià	n. n.	emperor rack	战争	zhànzhēng		n.
材	jiàocái	n.	textbook	哲学	zhéxué		n.
典	jīngdiǎn	adj.	classical	宗教	zōngjiào		n.
7	jīngguò	v.	pass by	左转	zuŏ zhuăn		v.
-体	jùtĭ	adj.	specific	•	zuòzhě		n.
N. R402	kŏngpà	adv.	for fear of	陈寿	Chén Shòu		
 {	lèi	n.	kind, genre	汉朝	Hàncháo		n.
Ē	mǒu	pron.	certain, some	《三国志》	Sānguózhì		
胡刊室	qīkānshì	n.	periodical reading room	《史记》	Shĭjì		
虽烈	qiángliè	adj.	strong, intense	。司马迁	Sīmă Qiān		
央点	quēdiǎn	n.		西晋	Xī Jìn		n.

UNIT When is our assignment due?

# Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Look at the two-character words and complete the sentences.

期末 end of the semester	The meaning
周末 weekend	of末is
月末 end of the month	
扮演 play a role	
表演 perform, performance	The meaning of 演 is
排演 rehearse	
演出 performance	P

- 1-16
- Amanda is talking to Yeong-min after class. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 他们刚上完什么课?
  - 2 作业什么时候交?
  - 3 他们对作业有什么问题,打算怎 么做?

#### Check the true statements.

- □ 1 阿曼达正在准备音乐比赛。
- □ 2 永民也是戏剧小组的。
- □ 3 永民坐在前排是因为前面的 椅子很舒服。
- □ 4 老师说作业得下个星期三下 午四点以前交。
- □ 5 阿曼达已经决定了作业写什 么题目。
- □ 6 永民还没想好作业写什么题目。

阿曼达: 永民!

永民: 阿曼达, 好久不见, 最近怎么样?

阿曼达: 很好啊。你呢, 最近忙什么呢?

永民: 我准备这个月末参加音乐比赛。

你呢?除了上课,还忙些什么?

阿曼达: 我们戏剧小组正在排演一个新戏, 叫"爱丽丝在中国", 期末会在学生活动中心演出。我扮演爱丽丝。

永民: 太好了, 到时候我一定去看你 们的表演。

阿曼达: 没想到你也选了中国历史课。 我刚才看见你坐在前排。

永民: 对啊, 坐前面可以听得清楚一点。

阿曼达:对了,下课前老师说什么时候 交作业,你听到了吗?大家都 在收拾东西,教室里太吵,我 没听清楚。是星期四交吗?

永民: 不是, 是下周三。

阿曼达: 星期三什么时候都可以吗?

永民: 得四点以前交。

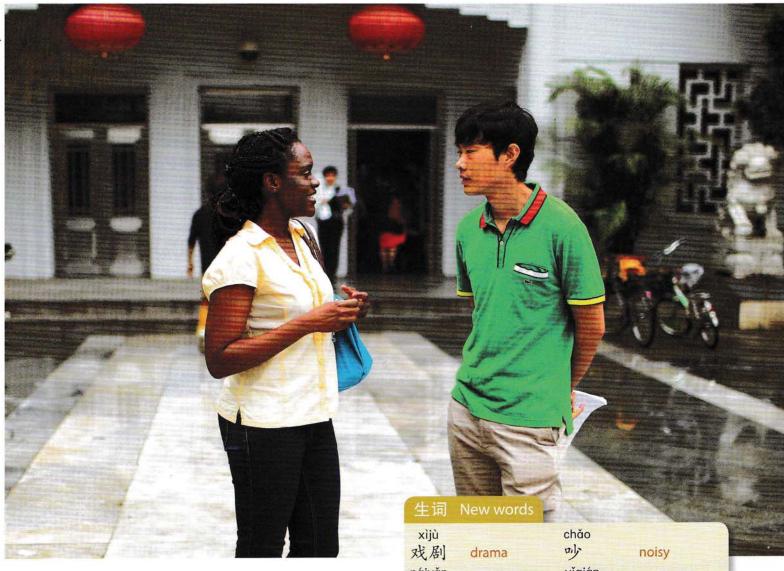
阿曼达: 十点以前?

永民: 不是, 是下午四点以前。

阿曼达: 真不好意思。这儿也很吵。

永民: 没关系。你想好作业写什么题 目了吗?

阿曼达: 我还没决定呢。你呢?



永民: 我还想让你给我出主意呢。

阿曼达: 不如我们一起讨论讨论吧。

你现在忙不忙, 我们去咖

啡厅坐坐怎么样?

永民: 不好意思, 我接下来还有

课,得走了。我们打电话

或者发短信再约时间吧。

你有我的手机号码吗?

阿曼达:有。那我们回头见。

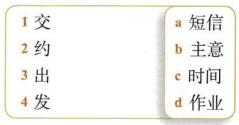
永民: 再见!

xìjù		chăo	
戏剧	drama	吵	noisy
páiyǎn		yĭqián	
排演	rehearse	以前	before
yănchū		tímù	
演出	performance	题目	title, topic
huódòng		juéding	
活动	activity	决定	decide
zhōngxīn		chū zhǔyi	composite catalo
中心	centre	出主意	come up with an idea
bànyăn		bùrú	ur idea
扮演	play (a role)	不如	why not
biǎoyǎn		tǎolùn	
表演	perform	讨论	discuss
kànjiàn		jiē xiàlai	
看见	see	接下来	next
qiánpái		fā duǎnxìn	and to a
前排	front row	发短信	send text messages
qiánmiàn		yuē shíjiān	messages
前面	in the front	约时间	arrange a time
qīngchu		huítóu jiàn	
清楚	clear	回头见	șee you later
shōushi			
收拾	clean up		
THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN	THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO	THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON.	The second second

Find out the meaning of the compound words following the example.

戏剧小组 = 戏剧 + 小组 = drama group

- 1 活动中心 =
- 2 音乐比赛 =
- 3 手机号码 =
- Match the words to make phrases.



List all the resultative complements in the conversation. Write down their meanings.

看见:

see

You are going to hear some conversations about deadlines.

Look at the words in the table and predict what questions are asked about the deadlines.

	事件	时间
1	交作业	
2	交手机费	
3	还书	
4	关门	
5	决定	

Now listen and complete the table.

- 0 1-17
- Work in pairs and check your answers.

Now listen again.

## Pronunciation and speaking

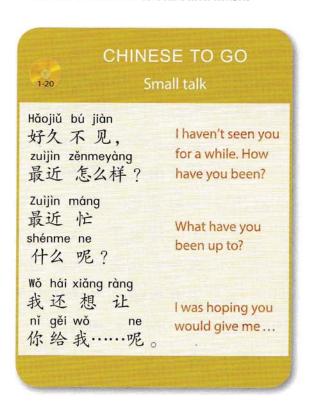


- Work in pairs. Talk about when the following expressions are used to greet people.
  - 1 好久不见! 最近怎么样?
  - 2 最近忙什么呢?
  - 3 你好! 认识你很高兴!
  - 4 吃了吗?

Now listen and repeat.



- Listen and say the following sentences.
  - 1 不好意思,我得走了。
  - 2 我们打电话或者发短信再约时间吧。
  - 3 我们回头见!
  - . 4 明天见!
- Work in pairs. Act out a dialogue about the due date of an assignment for your Chinese class. Use the expressions in Activities 1 and 2 to start and finish.



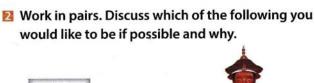
# LESSON | 2

# Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Write down four or five Chinese dynasties.



Now write down words related to as many of them as you can.







You are going to read a quiz from Amanda's history class. Guess the meaning of the question types.



排序题	
连线题	
简答题	
选择题	

Now read and try to answer the quiz on page 44. Then check your answers with your classmates.



# 历史小测验

## 排序题

1.	请将下列朝代按时间先后	台排列顺序。
	111111111111111111111111111111111111111	7 111 1 100 1 0

汉朝 秦朝 清朝 唐朝

2. 请将下列历史人物按出生时间的 先后排列顺序。

孔子 1 黄帝 成吉思汗

## 连线题

- 1. 请画线将人名与身份连起来。
  - 1) 李白
- a航海家
- 2) 郑和
- b皇帝
- 3) 孔子
- c哲学家
- 4) 秦始皇 d诗人
- 2. 请画线将下列工艺品与相关朝代 连起来。
  - 1) 兵马俑 a秦朝
- - 2) 唐三彩
- b汉朝
- 3) 青铜马
- c唐朝

3. 请画线将作者与书名连起来。

1) 司马迁 a《孙子兵法》

2) 孙子 /

b《三国志》

3) 陈寿

c《史记》

## 选择题

- 1. 请选出两个正确的说法。
  - a秦始皇是中国最后一个皇帝。
  - b清朝在19世纪结束。
  - c唐朝以诗词著称。
  - d中文也叫汉语,得名于汉朝。
- 2. 丝绸之路开始于。

a汉朝

b唐朝

c清朝

d明朝

## 简答题

- 1. 请从孔子的哲学思想中选出两个 重要概念并解释说明。
- 2. 请简要说明《孙子兵法》的历史 意义。

#### 生词 New words

The state of the s			
cèyàn		gōngyìpĭn	Comments of
测验	test	工艺品	arts and crafts
páixù		xiāngguān	Ciaits
排序	order	相关	relevant
xiàliè		Sūnzi Bīngfă	
下列	following	《孙子兵法》	The Art of
àn		xuǎnzé	War
按	according to	选择	choose
páiliè	according to	zhèngquè	
排列	arrange, order		correct
shùnxù	arrange, order	shuōfa	correct
	andan	说法	statement
顺序	order		Statement
rénwù	Contraction in	yǐ zhùchēng	
人物	figure	以 著称	tamous for
Huángdì	Yellow	sīchóu zhī lù	
黄帝	Emperor	丝绸之路	the Silk Road
Chéngjisihán		jiǎndá	
成吉思汗	Genghis Khan	简答	short answer
lián		sīxiǎng	the contra
连	connect	思想	thought, ideology
huà xiàn		gàiniàn	lucology
画 线	draw a line	概念	concept
yŭ		bìng	
与	with	并	moreover
shēnfèn.		jiěshì	
身份	identity	解释	explain
hánghǎijiā	rocertaity	shuōmíng	X(0.1/2*(2*1)0)
航海家	navigator,	说明	elaborate
为心存 不 zhéxuéjiā	seafarer	jiǎnyào	Clabolate
哲学家	philosophor	简要	brief and to
	philosopher		the point
shīrén		yìyì 主义	alamifean as
诗人	poet	意义	significance
THE RESERVE AND ADDRESS OF THE PERSON NAMED IN	THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA	THE RESERVE TO SHARE THE PARTY OF THE PARTY	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NAMED IN COLUM

#### Find the sentences with the same meanings in the quiz.

- 1 把下面这些朝代按时间先后排列顺序。
- 2 唐朝因为诗词出名。
- 3 中文也叫汉语, 名字是从汉朝得来的。
- 4 请从孔子的哲学思想中选出两个重要概念, 再解释说明一下。

#### Match the words with similar meanings.



Now work in pairs. Discuss which group of words sounds more formal, the one on the left or right?

- Rewrite the sentences using more formal expressions.
  - 1 西安因为有很多名胜古迹而出名。
  - 2"汉族"的名字也是从"汉朝"得来的。
  - **3** 请写出下面这些哲学家出生的朝代,再说明他们的重要思想。
  - 4 请把你的名字写在这里。
- Write a quiz for Chinese students on Western history. Use the quiz in Activity 3 to help you.



## Language in use

Expressing "any" using

什么……都……

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	什么	Noun phrase	都	Verb
你	什么	时候	都	可以给我打
.N.	114	时恢	印	电话。
马克	什么	菜	都	喜欢吃。
永民	什么	地方	都	不想去。
史蒂夫	什么	事情	都	知道。
他家里	什么	书	都	没有。

#### Now check the correct statements.

- □ 1 什么 means "what" here.
- □ 2 什么 means "any" here.
- □ 3 都 is always necessary.

# Translate the sentences into Chinese using 什么…都…….

- 1 He is very smart. He can learn anything very quickly.
- 2 I do not know anything about the Qing Dynasty.
- 3 Kate would like to watch any performance in London.
- 4 She does not want to participate in any competitions this semester.
- 5 The student has not turned in any of the homework.
- 图 Work in pairs and act out a conversation about a trip.
  Answer every question with 什么……都…….

## 这个假期

- 你想去什么地方?
- 你想什么时候去?
- 你想吃什么菜?
- 你想住什么宾馆?

Making suggestions using 不如····· 怎么样/吧

#### Look at the sentences.

Other	不如	Suggestion	怎么样/ 吧
今天下雨,	不如	我们明天再 去图书馆	吧。
伦敦我去过了,		这次假期我 们去悉尼	怎么样?
不好意 思,我没 有绿茶,		我们喝咖啡	門。
我家离这 儿不远,	不如	去我家坐坐。	
这个概念 很难懂	不如	我们去问 老师,	怎么样?

#### Now check the correct statements.

- □ 1 不如 always appears before the suggestion, while 怎么样 and 吧 always appear at the end of the sentence.
- □ 2 不如 has to be combined with 怎么样 or 吧.
- □ 3 怎么样 and 吧 cannot be used together.
- Make suggestions for someone in the following situations using 不如……怎么样/吧.
  - 1 没想到看表演的人这么多!
  - 2 真糟糕! 我忘了买历史课教材了。
  - 3 图书馆今天怎么下午五点就关门了!
  - 4 第一次参加作文比赛,我有点紧张。
  - 5 上课我听不懂老师说什么,怎么办?

# Expressing formality through vocabulary

#### Look at the sentences. Notice the underlined words.

- 1 a 请将姓名写在考试答题纸右上角。
  - b 阅读完,请将期刊放回原处。
- 2 a 请写出下列书籍的作者<u>并</u>说明书籍的 主要内容。
  - b请出示您的地铁票并准备安全检查。
- 3 a 美国的很多城市都得名于欧洲的地名。
  - b 二战开始于1939年,结束于1945年。
  - c 孔子生于公元前551年,死于公元前479年。
  - d纽约位于美国的东北部。
- 4 a 悉尼以悉尼歌剧院著称。
  - b香港以美食著称。

Now rewrite the sentences using less formal Chinese.

#### Check the correct statements.

- 1 Formal vocabulary is mostly used in written language — you may find it in books, tests, newspapers, announcements, etc.
- 2 Formal words are usually shorter than their modern, colloquial versions.
- Formal words are used exactly the same as their modern, colloquial versions.

#### Work in pairs. Talk about the formal expressions you have learnt in Discover China.

- 一请问, 您贵姓?
- 一课程将根据学生的平时表现和期末考试 进行评估。

# Stating a rationale using

#### 根据

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	根据	Noun phrase	Verb
老师	根据	学生的平 时表现	给成绩。
阿曼达	根据	自己的兴趣	选课。
请	根据	时间 先后	给下列历史 事件排序。
旅游的时候,	根据	自己的经济情况	选择住什么样的宾馆。

#### Now check two correct explanations.

- □ 1 根据 means "from".
- Like most prepositions, 根据 always appears before the verb.
- What appears after 根据 is always a noun phrase.

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

1 永民根据\_\_\_\_\_\_选择饭馆。

2 阿曼达根据\_\_\_\_\_\_选择选修课。

3 《新闻周刊》(Newsweek) 根据 \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_给美国大学排名。

4 他们根据 决定度假的地方。

5 我根据 \_\_\_\_\_\_选择大学。

Turn to page 186 for grammar reference.

# Communication activity

Work in pairs. Prepare five quiz questions about the main characters and storylines in *Discover* China. Use the quiz in Lesson 2 to help you.

#### 连线题

请把下列人物和他们来自的国家连在一起:

- 1 阿曼达
- a 中国

2 永民

- b 澳大利亚
- 3 史蒂夫
- c 巴西

- 4 王玉
- d 韩国

5 马克

- e 英国
- Work with the whole class to produce a quiz show on Discover China, using the quiz questions in Activity 1.



Turn to pages 173 and 179 for more speaking practice.

## Cultural corner

# Review and practice

- Answer the questions with appropriate expressions.
  - 1 好久不见! 最近怎么样?
  - 2 真不好意思。我忘了你的名字。
  - 3 不如我们现在去咖啡厅坐坐吧?
  - 4 我得走了。你有我的手机号对不对?
  - 5 我们回头见!
  - 6 最近忙什么呢?
  - 7 我们今天晚上一起去看电影,怎么样?
- Match the verbs with the nouns to make phrases.



# Confucius Institutes

Confucius Institutes have been set up all over the world to facilitate the study of the Chinese language and promote Chinese culture globally. Headquartered in Beijing and named after Confucius (孔子), the great Chinese philosopher and educator, Confucius Institutes are overseen by the Office of Chinese Language Council International (国家汉办). Confucius Institutes usually operate with local partners, which can be colleges, universities, secondary schools and other non-profit organizations. Some offer Chinese

language classes directly, some provide teacher training and instructional materials, while others organize cultural activities, and give support to conferences and research projects. They are often compared to Britain's British Council and Germany's Goethe-Institut, both of which are wellestablished organizations facilitating language and cultural exchange. The first Confucius Institute opened in the Republic of Korea in 2004, and since then hundreds of Confucius Institutes have been established in over 100 countries.

3 C	omplete the ser	ntences with the c	orrect words.
1	我不喜欢坐	全在电影院	,因为看
	电影不舒服	₹°°	
	a前排	b排演	c排序
2	我刚才说什	么, 你	了吗?
	a 听清楚	b 没听清楚	c听得清楚
3	对不起,我	还没有选	住哪个房间。
	a 对	b 完	c 好
4	永民刚去了	上海和北京。	他打
	算去香港。		
	a以下	b下列	c 接下来'
5	不好意思,	下周三我有事。	我们再
	一个时间吧	0	- And all accommendations of
	a 做	b 约	c 出
6	怎么办? 你	<b>公</b> 给我	个主意吧。
	a 出	b 给	c 做
7	美国加州_	天气好	著称。
	a于	<b>b</b> 对	c 以
8	请你将这本	书中最	_的概念画出来。
	a 重要	b 重点	c 重心

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 Hong Kong is one of the most important financial centres in the world.
- We are going to rehearse Shakespeare's Twelfth Night (《第十二夜》) this weekend.
- 3 I went to the student centre just now.
- 4 If you start to prepare now, you can compete in the Chinese language contest.
- 5 I'm sorry, but our library does not have Chinese periodicals.
- 6 New York got its name from York, a place in England.
- 7 Why is it important to study Chinese? Please explain with examples.

Read the instruction from a Chinese test and check the correct statements.

说明: 1-15题,每一道题,你会听到一句话。在试卷上你会看到abcd四张画,请你选出跟这句话内容一致的那一张,并在答卷的字母上画一横道。请注意,这部分试题,每句话听两遍。

例如: 第4题, 你听到:"她正在做饭。"

你在试卷上看到四张画:









第4题正确的答案是b, 你应该在答卷上找到 号码4, 在字母b上画一横道。

4. [a] <del>[b]</del> [c] [d]

-	
7	第1_15即見 11 五字寸即
	55-1-13正火元下的1 11/5 LLL正火。
2	第1-15题是听力考试题。

- □ 2 第1-15题的每句话只能听到一遍。
- □ 3 答案要写在试卷上。
- □ 4 在答卷上看不到画。

Now guess the meaning of the words.

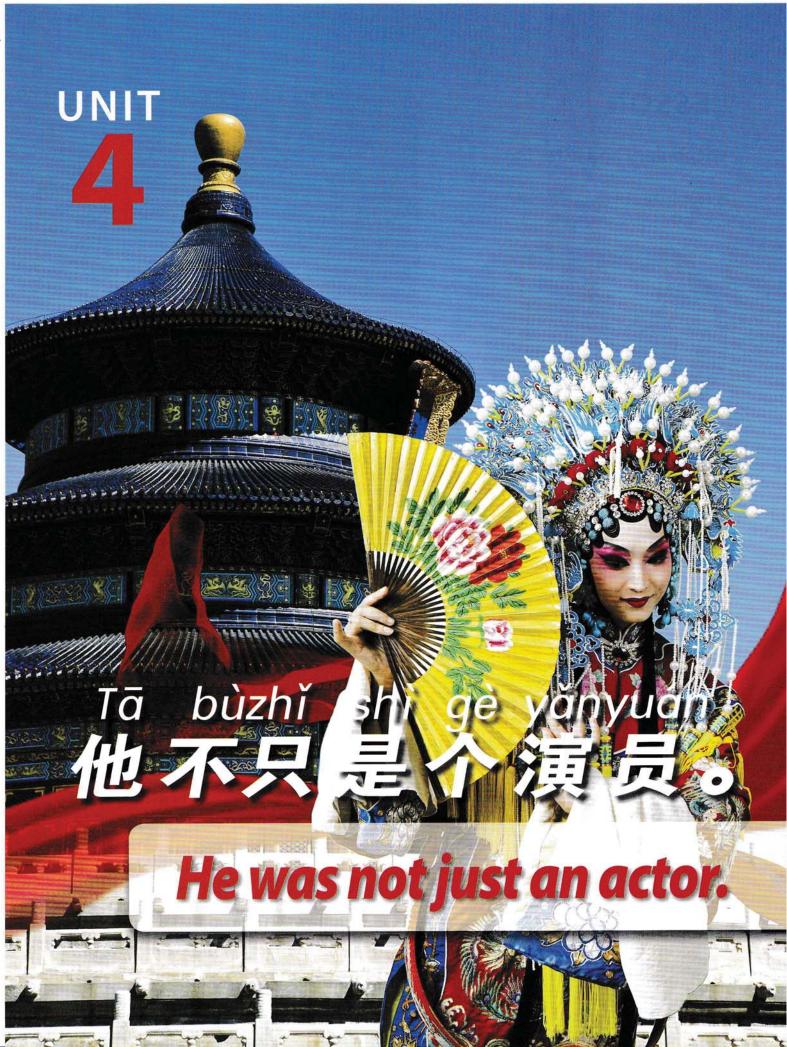
例如:	试卷:	
号码:	答卷:	

- Write an email to a colleague about a project. Explain or ask about:
  - · what the project is;
  - · what your schedule is;
  - · your contact information;
  - · your colleague's availability;
  - · possible times and places to meet.

# Vocabulary review

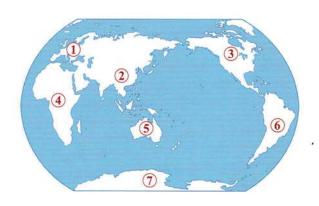
Fill in the blanks.

	àn	prep.	according to	清楚	qīngchu	adj.	clear
扮演	bànyăn	V.	play (a role)	人物	rénwù	n.	figure
	biăoyăn	v.	perform	身份	shēnfèn	n.	identity
并	bìng	conj.		诗人	shīrén	n.	poet
不如	bùrú	conj.	why not	收拾	shōushi	v.	
测验	cèyàn-	v.	test	0	shùnxù	n.	order
	chǎo	adj.	noisy	说法	shuōfa	n.	statement
出主意	chū zhǔyi		come up with an idea	说明	shuōmíng	v.	
发短信	fā duǎnxìn		send text	思想	sīxiǎng	n.	thought, ideology
			messages	讨论	tăolùn	V.	<u> </u>
概念	gàiniàn	n.	concept	题目	tímù	n.	title, topic
工艺品	gōngyìpĭn	n.	arts and crafts	戏剧	xìjù	n.	drama
航海家	hánghǎijiā	n.	navigator, seafarer	下列 .	xiàliè	n.	following
画线	huàxiàn	v.		相关	xiāngguān	v.	relevant
回头见	huítóu jiàn		see you later	<u> </u>	xuǎnzé	v.	choose
	huódòng	n.	activity	演出	yănchū	n.	
简答	jiǎndá	n.	short answer		yĭqián	n.	before
	jiǎnyào	adj.	brief and to the point	以著称	yĭzhùchēng		famous for
接下来	jiē xiàlai		next	意义	yìyì	n.	
	jiěshì	v.	explain	与	yŭ	prep.	<u></u>
决定	juédìng	v.		约时间	yuē shíjiān		arrange a time
	kànjiàn	v.	see	哲学家	zhéxuéjiā	n.	philosopher
连	lián	v.	connect	正确	zhèngquè	adj.	*
	páiliè	v.	arrange, order	中心	zhōngxīn	n.	centre
排序	páixù	v.	order	成吉思汗	Chéngjísīhán		Genghis Khan
排演	páiyăn	v.	rehearse	黄帝	Huángdì		Yellow Emperor
	qiánmiàn	n.	in the front	丝绸之路	sīchóu zhī lù		the Silk Road
前排	qiánpái	n.	front row	《孙子兵法》	Sūnzĭ bīngfă		The Art of War



# Vocabulary and listening

Look at the world map. Match the names with the correct continents.



- a 亚洲 b 非洲 c 北美洲 d 南美洲 e 大洋洲 f 南极洲 g 欧洲
- Work in pairs. Match the words with their meanings.
  - 1 英雄
- a ordinary person
- 2 普通人
- **b** historical figure
- 3 历史人物
- c hero
- 4 演员
- d actor

Now give an example of each of the words.



- Amanda and Yeong-min are discussing their assignment. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 作业题是什么?
  - 2 他们都说到了哪些人物?
  - 3 阿曼达想写谁,为什么?
  - 4 永民想写谁, 为什么?

阿曼达: 这儿真安静。历史课的作业, 你想好写什么了吗?

永民:看看作业题是怎么说的:"选择中国历史上的一位英雄,介绍他/ 她的生平,并解释一下你为什么 认为他/她是英雄。"

阿曼达: 可是什么样的人才算是英雄呢?

永民: 英雄, 不就是重要人物吗?

阿曼达: 不一定吧,普通人也可以是英雄啊,比方说花木兰。

永民: 迪士尼电影《花木兰》里的那个 女孩子?

阿曼达:对啊。花木兰假扮男人,代替她的 父亲参军。在古代中国,一个女孩 子能这么做,真是不简单。

永民: 你肯定那个故事是真实的吗?

阿曼达:这个……我不太肯定。

永民:传说中的人物, 我觉得不能写吧。你认为李小龙怎么样?

阿曼达: 功夫明星李小龙? 不行吧。他只是个演员啊。

永民:他不只是个演员。他多次说过: "我首先是一个武术家,然后才 是演员。"是他把中国功夫介绍 给了世界。

永民: 明朝的航海家?他有那么重



要吗?

阿曼达: 当然了。郑和出海到了东

南亚、印度,甚至到了非洲;中国和很多国家和地区的贸易和文化交流,是从他出海开始的。我认为他对中国历史发展的影响,比李小龙大多了。

永民: 我不同意你的看法。历史 上的航海家那么多,没什 么了不起。

阿曼达: 我认为郑和的生平很值得

写。他七次出海,后来很多人使用的航海图都可

能是他的船队画的呢。

永民: 是吗!那你就写郑和吧。

yiligxlong		omjio .	
英雄	hero	世界	world
shēngping		yŏu dàolĭ	
生平	life story	有道理	reasonable
rènwéi		chūhǎi	
认为	think, believe	出海	go to sea
kěshì		Dōngnányà	
可是	but	东南亚	Southeast Asia
suàn		Yìn dù	
算	count	印度	India
Díshìní		shènzhì	
迪士尼	Disney	甚至	even
jiǎbàn		Fēizhōu	
假扮	disguise oneself as	非洲	Africa
dàitì		guójiā	
代替	replace	国家	country
fùqin		màoyì	
父亲	father	贸易	trade
cānjūn		jiāoliú	
参军	join the military	交流	exchange
kěnding		tóngyì	
肯定	confirm	同意	agree
zhēnshí		kànfă	
真实	true	看法	opinion
chuánshuō		zhídé	
传说	legend	值得	worth
shŏuxiān		hánghǎitú	
首先	first of all	航海图	nautical chart
wŭshù jiā		chuánduì	
武术家	martial arts master	船队	fleet

#### 4 Check the true statements.

- □ 1 阿曼达和永民找了个安静的地方。
- □ 2 花木兰是现代人物。
- □ 3 李小龙是功夫电影明星。
- □ 4 永民认为郑和比李小龙更重要。
- □ 5 中国和非洲的贸易是从郑和出海开始的。
- Complete the passage with the words in the box.

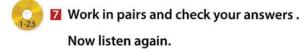
## 不一定 肯定 首先 影响 了不起

花木兰的故	事对我的	J	很大	。虽然	我不
是很	花木兰	是不是	一个真	实的历	史人
物,可是我	觉得花木	兰很_	0		_,
她像男人一	·样参军;	并且,	她是为	了她的	父亲
才假扮男人	的。如果	具我是花	<b>达木兰</b> ,	我	
能做到像她	一样。				

- You are going to hear some conversations. Look at the replies below and decide if the speakers are sure or not.
  - □ 当然了!
  - □不一定吧。
  - □ 肯定的啊。
  - □ 我也不是很清楚。
  - □ 那还用说吗!

Now listen and complete the table.

	问题	能否肯定
1	下周三有考试吗?	
2	乔治·华盛顿是吗?	
3	他是你吗?	
4	上课前看看书就能,	
4	对不对?	
5	中国科技馆吗?	



# Pronunciation and speaking



- Listen and repeat the sentences.
  - 1 我不同意你的看法。
  - 2 有道理!
  - 3 不一定吧!
  - 4 这个……我不太肯定。
  - 5 当然了。
- Work in pairs. Tell each other something about a historical figure in your country who you think is important. Say:
  - who they were;
  - · when they lived;
  - · what they did.

Now discuss whether you think they are heroes. Use the expressions in Activity 1 to agree or disagree.

- 一我觉得拿破仑(Napoleon)是法 国历史上的大英雄。
- 一我不同意你的看法。



# **Reading and writing**

Work in pairs. Find all the words in the passage on page 56 which include 拳.



Look at the first four words and guess the meaning of the others.

粤剧	Cantonese opera
京剧	Peking opera
电视剧	TV series
戏剧	theatre
歌剧	
音乐剧	
舞剧	
话剧	
喜剧	

**I** Work in pairs. Write down the words you have learnt with 演 and their meanings.



Now find all the words with 演 in the passage on page 56 and write them in the table.

- Read the life story of Bruce Lee on page 56 and check the correct statements.
  - □ 1 他出生在美国。
  - □ 2 他母亲是粤剧演员。
  - □ 3 他跟父亲学了太极拳。
  - □ 4 他在香港念大学。
  - □ 5 他在1970年以后因为《青蜂侠》 出名。
  - □ 6 他自创了拳法,开了功夫学校。
  - □ 7 他去世的时候只有三十几岁。

# 李小龙生平

李小龙1940年11月27日出生于美国加州旧金山。李小龙的父亲是香港的一名粤剧演员,1939年带着妻子和两个女儿在美国演出。李小龙是家里的第四个孩子,英文名字叫Bruce Lee。

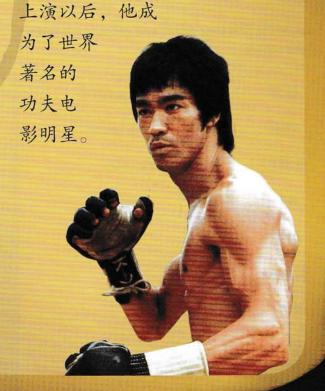
李小龙出生后不久,一家 人就回到了香港。七岁的时候 他开始跟父亲学习太极拳; 1953年又开始学习咏春拳。李 小龙热爱武术。为了提高自己 的功夫,他学习了很多种拳 法,包括西洋拳法。这为他后 来自创拳法打下了基础。1959 年,李小龙回到美国读书。

1961年,从职业学校毕业以后,李小龙进入华盛顿大学学习哲学。他一边学习,一边继续研究武术,大学二年级时开始教别人打拳。教拳的时候,他认识了后来的妻子琳达。1964年他们结了婚,很快就搬到了加州、在那里开了自

己的武术学校。

1965年到1971年,李小龙 演出了多部美国电影和电视 剧。1966年到1967年,李小龙 因为电视剧《青蜂侠》一举成 名。1971年,李小龙带着妻子 和两个孩子搬到香港。他一回 到香港就主演了几部非常成功 的电影。

1973年7月20日,由于药物过敏,李小龙在香港去世。遗作《死亡游戏》



#### 生词 New words

Jiāzhōu		dăquán	
加州	California	打拳	practise boxing
Jiùjīnshān		jiéhūn	
旧金山	San Francisco	结婚	get married
yuèjù	Combonata	bān	
粤剧	Cantonese opera	搬	move
qīzi	Орсіч	bù	(f - , f:1 - , - , -   T) (
妻子	wife	部	(for films and TV series)
nů' ér		diànshìjù	SCI1C3)
女儿	daughter	电视剧	TV series
tàijíquán		Qīng fēng xiá	TI C
太极拳	tai chi	《青蜂侠》	The Green Hornet
yŏngchūnquán		yìjǔ-chéngmíng	
咏春拳	Wing-chun	一举成名	gain instant fame
rè' ài	harve a disease	zhŭyăn	
热爱	have a deep love for	主演	play the leading role
quánfă	10101	chénggōng	
拳法	boxing	成功	successful
wèile	Comple	yóuyú	
为了	for the purpose of	由于	due to
bāokuò	purpose or	yàowù	
包括	include	药物	drug, medication
Xīyáng		guòmĭn	
西洋	West	过敏	be allergic to
zìchuàng.		qùshì	
自创	create by oneself	去世	pass away
dúshū	unio de la	yízuò	
读书	go to school	遗作	posthumous work
zhíyè xuéxiào	wasstlawal	shàngyǎn	
职业学校	vocational school	上演	release, play
bìyè	50,1001	Sĭwáng yóuxì	
毕业	graduate	《死亡游戏》	Game of Death
jìxù		chéngwéi	
继续	continue	成为	become
niánjí		zhùmíng	
年级	grade	著名	famous
jiāo			
教	teach		
	STATE OF THE STATE		- I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I

- 5 Answer the questions.
  - 1 李小龙为什么能够自创拳法?
  - **2** 李小龙的武术学校是在哪里 开的?
  - **3** 李小龙主演的电影和电视剧 主要是在哪里拍的?
  - 4 什么是"遗作"?
- 6 Complete the table about Bruce Lee's life story.

英文名: Bruce Lee 中文名: 职 业: 平: 1940年-1973年 时间 地点 事件 在美国 旧金山 1961年 跟 结婚 1966年 因为\_\_\_\_成名 1971年 在香港 以后 由于\_\_\_\_去世

Work in pairs. Choose a film star or singer and complete a table about his/her life. Use the table in Activity 6 to help you.

Now write the life story of this person. Use the text and Activity 5 to help you.

## Language in use

Expressing "even" using

甚至

Look at the sentences.

Other	A, B, C,	甚至	X
他去过	北京、上海、西安,	甚至	哈尔滨。
她会说很多种外语,比方说	英语、法语、德语,	甚至.	泰国话。
为了发展事业,她	可以牺牲(sacrifice) 很多东西,	甚至	可以不要家庭。
你可以用智 能手机	打电话、听音乐、 看电影、玩游戏,	甚至	让它帮你 找饭店。
这个饭馆很 受欢迎,	不但当地人常常去,很多外地人,	甚至	外国人也 特意去尝 他们的菜。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 What appears after 甚至 is an unlikely example of the main topic.
- What appear before 甚至 are more common examples of the main topic.
- 3 What appears after 甚至 has to be a noun phrase.

#### 2 Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 Amanda is a good cook. She can make sandwiches, spaghetti, and even Kung Pao Chicken.
- 2 Cola is sold everywhere. You can even find it in stores in small villages in China.
- 3 You can use the Internet to book air tickets, find places to eat, do grocery shopping, and even find your love.
- 4 This Chinese character is very uncommon. You cannot even find it in most dictionaries.

Expressing "be worth" using

值得

#### Look at the sentences.

Topic	值得	
这本书很有意思,	值得	好好 看看。
这种电脑又轻又好用,1000块钱	很值得。	
我觉得故宫	很值得	去。
虽然火车票有时 候跟飞机票一样 贵,可是我觉得	很值得。	
这个题目	值得	写。
马克这个朋友	值得	交。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 值得 is always followed by a verb.
- □ 2 值得 is used to express that something/someone is worth one's time/money/energy.
- □ 3 When 值得 is followed by a verb, the topic is actually the object of the verb.

# 2 Work in pairs. Make a list of worthwhile places for a visitor to your town. Think about:

- · places to go;
- · restaurants for dinner;
- · things to do.

我觉得\_\_\_\_\_(不)值得\_\_\_\_\_ 因为\_\_\_\_\_

# Expressing purpose using

为了

#### 1 Look at the sentences.

为了	Purpose	Main clause
为了	提高英文水平,	他天天跟美国朋友说话。
为了	发展经济,	中国从1979年开始对外贸易。
为了	学习中医,	2009年永民来到了北京。

Main clause	是为了	Purpose
李小龙开武术学校	是为了	让更多美国人 了解中国功夫。
她搬到洛杉矶 (Los Angles)	是为了	有机会当演员。
他学中文	是为了	在中国找工作。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 What appears after 为了 is the purpose of the action in the main clause.
- □ 2 是为了 + purpose can appear either before or after the main clause.
- □ 3 为了 means "in order to "or " for the sake of".

#### Complete the paragraph.

很多人上大学是为	为了	,	可是
李明上大学是为了		_, 所	心他
选择	作为自己的	专业。	为了
提高自己的专业力	k平,他	The same	
从大学毕业以后,	他打算	fi	_,
早为了			

#### Stating causes using

由于

#### Look at the sentences.

由于	Cause	Main clause
由于	大雪,	去纽约的飞机今 天不飞了。
由于	考试题目太难,	很多同学都考得 很不好。
由于	家庭的原因,	他选择出国上 大学。
由于	跟同屋关系不 太好,	她决定下个学期 自己一个人住。

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- 1 由于 means "due to", and always appears before the main clause.
- 2 由于 is more formal than 因为.
- 3 由于 is identical to 因为.
- 4 What appears after 由于 is always a noun phrase.

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- □ 1 由于\_\_\_\_\_\_,夏天的飞机票 总是特别贵。
- □ 2 由于\_\_\_\_\_\_,中国功夫慢慢 被世界了解。
- □ 3 由于\_\_\_\_\_\_,阿曼达选修了中国历史课。
- □ 4 由于\_\_\_\_\_\_,李小龙一举 成名。
- Turn to page 187 for grammar reference.

## **Communication activity**

Write a brief life story of a person you think made a great impact on world culture in the 20th century.



Now work in groups. Talk about the people you have chosen and decide on one as your group choice.

- Prepare a presentation on your group's choice. Give the presentation to the class and vote for the best one.
  - Turn to pages 173 and 179 for more speaking practice.

## **Cultural** corner

# Zheng He-China's Magellan

Zheng He (1371–1433), the admiral of the Ming Dynasty fleet, is considered to be one of the greatest maritime explorers. Born into a Muslim family and originally named Ma Sanbao, Zheng He helped his patron to become emperor and was made an admiral in his early years. Under orders of the Ming Emperor, Zheng commanded seven voyages from China to the Pacific and Indian Oceans, between 1405 and 1433, reaching the coasts

of Southeast Asia, India, the Middle East and even East Africa. Researchers believe that Zheng's fleet consisted of hundreds of huge ships which were equipped with the most advanced nautical navigation tools, and with a crew of over 20,000. Zheng's expeditions introduced Chinese civilization to India, Arabia and Africa, opened up Chinese trade routes, and greatly advanced maritime navigation technology.

## Review and practice

- Correct the sentences.
  - 1 我明年毕业从大学。
  - 2 我不同意你。
  - 3 2008年奥运会举办在北京。
  - 4 李小龙一举成名因为《青蜂侠》。
  - 5 阿曼达选择了历史课根据自己的兴趣。
  - 6 她成为越来越美丽。
  - 7 我结婚跟他已经十年了。
  - 8 他去世由于药物过敏。
  - 9 中国的影响对世界越来越大。
  - 10 1945 年我的父母搬到上海从香港。

2 Com	plete the sen	tences w	ith the co	rrect words.
	≤小龙			
a	演员	b 主海	ĺ	c 上演
2 仿	r打算什么时	寸候搬_		英国去?
a	来	b 去		c 到
3 这	(个题真难!		老师	也不知道
怎	怎么回答。			
a	甚至	b虽然	È	c肯定
4 仿	<b>r在大学里</b> 的	的	是作	十么?
a	职业	b 毕业		c专业
5 我	希望自己.		_一个了	了不起的
英	连雄。			
a	成功	b 成为	]	c长成
6 伤	成得桂林		_是中国	国的大城
त	可吗?			

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

a 算

1 Superman (超人) is not a real heroic figure.

b 是 c 有

- 2 She is an actress first and a film star second.
- 3 Cultural exchange between China and the U.S. started in the early 20th century.
- 4 I am afraid that I disagree with you.
- 5 The world-famous Great Wall is definitely worth visiting.
- 6 Who is your favourite Disney character?
- 7 My grandfather was born in 1911 and passed away in 1979.
- 8 She is interested in becoming a TV actress.

Read the life story of Audrey Hepburn and check the correct statements.

奥黛丽·赫本 (Audrey Hepburn) 是二十 世纪最著名的电影演员之一。她是英国人, 可是却是在比利时 (Belgium) 出生的。她从 小就学习跳舞。1948年她19岁的时候来到 伦敦,继续学跳舞,并进行音乐剧和电影 表演。1953年,她因为主演电影《罗马假日》 (Roman Holiday) 一举成名。在50年代和60 年代, 赫本主演了很多世界著名的电影, 包 括《窈窕淑女》(My Fair Lady) 和《蒂凡尼的早餐》 (Breakfast at Tiffany's)。她在电影中的表演受到 很多观众的喜爱。赫本不但是一个了不起 的女演员,有着美好的外表,她还有一颗 金子一样的心。70年代开始,赫本演出的电 影慢慢变少, 她把大部分的时间用于帮助 别人。她到了非洲、南美洲和亚洲, 去帮助 当地的人民。1993年,由于重病,赫本在瑞 士 (Switzerland) 的家中去世。

-	"一世上上人口。"
2	她19岁开始学跳舞。

1 赫木出生在蓝国

- □ 3 她因为《窈窕淑女》而一举成名。
- □ 4 70年代开始,赫本不再演电影了。
- □ 5 "有一颗金子一样的心"的意思是说 她非常喜欢钱。
- □ 6 赫本最后是在瑞士去世的。

# Choose an actor/actress you like best and write a passage about his/her life.

- Use the table in Activity 5 on page 57 to draft the outline.
- Put the information into a passage like the one in Activity 4 on this page.

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

搬	bān	v.		<b>:</b>	rènwéi	V.	think, believe
	bāokuò	v.	include	上演	shàngyǎn	v.	release, play
毕业	bìyè	v.			shènzhì	conj.	even.
部	bù -	measui word	re (for films and TV series)	生平	shēngpíng	n.	life story
参军	cānjūn	v.	join the military	世界	shìjiè shŏuxiān	n. conj.	first of all
	chénggōng	adj.	successful	算	suàn	v.	
成为	chéngwéi	v.		太极拳	tàijíquán	n.	tai chi
出海	chūhǎi	v.	go to sea		tóngyì	v.	agree
船队	chuánduì	n.	fleet	—— 为了	wèile	prep.	
	chuánshuō	n.	legend	武术家	wŭshùjiā	n.	martial arts master
打拳	dăquán	v.	box	西洋	Xīyáng	n.	West
代替 电视剧	dàitì diànshìjù	v. n.	TV drama	药物	yàowù	n.	drug, medication
东南亚	Dōngnányà	n.	Southeast Asia	遗作	yízuò	n.	posthumous work
读书 非洲	dúshū Fēizhōu	v. n.	Africa	一举成名	yìjǔ-chéngmíng	9	gain instant fame
	fùqin	n.	father	英雄	yīngxióng	n.	hero
国家	guójiā	n.				prep./	
过敏	guòmĭn	v.	be allergic to		yóuyú	conj.	due to
航海图	hánghǎitú	n.	nautical chart	有道理	yǒu dàolĭ		reasonable
继续	jìxù	v.		真实	zhēnshí	adj.	true
假扮	jiăbàn	v.	disguise oneself as	值得 职业学校	zhídé	v.	vocational
教	jiāo	v.		<b></b>	zhíyè xuéxiào		school
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	jiāoliú	v.	exchange	主演	zhǔyǎn	V.	play the leading role
结婚	jiéhūn	v.	5		zhùmíng	adj.	famous
看法	kànfă	n.	opinion	—— 自创	zìchuàng	v.	create by oneself
可是	kěshì	conj.		迪士尼	Díshìní	n.	Disney
	kěndìng	v.	confirm	加州	Jiāzhōu	n.	California
贸易	màoyì	n.	trade	旧金山	Jiùjīnshān	n.	San Francisco
	niánjí	n.	grade	《青蜂侠》	Qīngfēngxiá		The Green Hornet
女儿	nŭ' ér qīzi	n. n.	wife	《死亡游戏》	Sĭwángyóuxì		Game of
去世	qùshì	ν.	pass away	印度	Yìndù	n.	<i>Death</i> India
本法 拳法	quánfă	n.	boxing	<b>咏春拳</b>	yŏngchūnquán		
丁石	quantu	110	have a deep	小个子	yongonunquan	11.	Wing-chun Cantonese

## **Review 1**

# Vocabulary

Match the verbs with the nouns to make phrases.

1 发	a 线
2 打	b 短信
3 出	c主意
4 约	d 表
5 填	e 时间
6 连	f 基础

Write three words with each character.

- 1排\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 演 \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 书\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 者\_\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 图 \_\_\_\_\_

思想

El Circle the odd words out.

5 身份

1	诗人	航海家	哲学家	人物
2	哲学	法律	教材	艺术
3	建议	相关	推荐	帮忙
4	解释	看完	找到	听懂

概念

电梯

Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 中国会 发展和其他国家的贸易 关系。
  - a 进行 b 继续
- 2 你错了,大学毕业以后我\_\_\_\_\_打算 学习法律。
  - a 并不
- b确实
- 3 长城是中国最\_\_\_\_\_\_的景点之一。
  - a 著名
- b成名
- 4 初学书法, \_\_\_\_\_是怎么拿笔。

  - a 优点 **b** 重点
- 5 今天我 \_\_\_\_\_ 黄老师给大家上课。
  - a 更替
- b代替
- 6 你知道最近\_\_\_\_\_了哪些好看的电影?
  - a 上演
- b 扮演

Match the words with their opposite meanings.

- 1 真
- 2 优点
- 3 首先
- 4 英雄
- 5 现代
- 6 正确
- 7 开始
- 8 好处

- a结束
- b普通人
- c最后
- d错误
- e 假
- f古代
- g缺点
- h 坏处

# Grammar

Complete the sentences with the correct words.	Complete the conversations with the words given.
1 你说得太快了,我没有听。 a 清楚 b 到 2 这么多饺子,他一个人肯定没吃	1 A: 我听说他在中国历史文化方面的知识非常丰富。 B: 没错,
a 完       b 好         3 我找了很久才在我们系的图书馆里找	2 A: 二胡是不是很难学? B:(对来说)。 3 A: 你大学学国际贸易,是不是因为这个专业很好找工作? B:(不是而是)。
没有? a 出 b 好  Complete the sentences with the words in the box. 根据 给 对 按 跟 以	4 A: 怎么办呢? 暑假我又想工作赚钱, 又想去法国玩玩。 B:
1 请大家	5 A: 马克去中国做什么? B:(为了) 6 A: 开学第一天,有什么新闻? B:(没想到)
<ul><li>3 麻烦你我推荐一个又好吃又不贵的意大利饭馆。</li><li>4韩国人来说,四川菜不算特别辣。</li></ul>	<ul> <li>1 Rewrite the sentences using less formal words.</li> <li>1 美国总统将于本月末访问中国。</li> <li>2 物品使用完毕请放回原处。</li> </ul>
5 新西兰 风景优美著称。 6 这部电影 航海家哥伦布"发现"美洲的历史有关。	3 纽约以丰富的文化生活著称。 4 由于昨晚大雨,本城交通受到严重影响。 5 我父亲生于1949年。

# **Integrated skills**



- Listen and choose the best interpretation of each sentence.
  - 1 a 这件衣服非常漂亮。
    - b这件衣服很普通。
    - c 这件衣服还不错。
  - 2 a 我知道我们学校图书馆很大。
    - b 我以为我们学校图书馆不太大。
    - 。 我很高兴因为我们学校图书馆很大。
  - 3 a 我怕做功课。
    - b 周末我很可能没法做功课。
    - 。 我担心周末我没有功课。
  - 4 a 我喜欢花木兰,因为她不是女英雄。
    - b 我喜欢花木兰,不只是因为她是个 女英雄,而且因为她很有爱心。
    - c 我喜欢花木兰,因为她有爱心。
  - 5 a 我建议你明年选修法语课。
    - b 今年你学了法语课,明年还学法语课。
    - 。 明年你不要选修法语课了。
  - 6 a 马克说商务汉语很难。
    - b商务汉语课非常难。
    - 由于马克的汉语水平不够,所以他 觉得上商务汉语课太难。

- Work in pairs. Complete the conversation with the words in brackets and then act it out.
  - A: 暑假时间很长,我想多看点书。你有什么推荐的吗?
  - B: 你想看什么方面的书?

B: 让我想一想。	我给你推荐《	
作者是	, 内容	

A: 听起来	。(挺的
Ai 明起木	。(延即

B: 我觉得这本书很	值得看,	因为	

(首先,再说,而且,适合)

- A: 好的, 有机会我一定看看。
- B: 你肯定会喜欢的。看完了跟我说说你 的看法。

Now change roles. Then replace the book with a film and act out the conversation again.

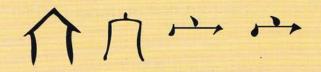
B Complete the passage with the words in the box.

成功甚至成为真实人物由于主演普通人电视剧一举成名

《六人行》(Fried	nds),又名《	老友记》,是美
国历史上	_ 是全世界最	最的
之一。故	故事的主要_	是六个
住在纽约的年轻	圣人。讲的是他	也们从相识到
好朋友,	,再到后来在	一起十年的生
活。剧中各种各种	样的人	_各种各样
的问题闹笑话。	观众喜欢它,	是因为在笑声
中, 我们看到了和	和我们一样的	1的
生活。剧中的几个	个都	因为这部戏

- Write a twitter entry with no more than four sentences describing each of the following:
  - 1 学校附近的饭馆/咖啡馆。
  - 2 你最近看过的书/电影/戏剧。
  - 3 上学期你最喜欢的课。
  - 4 你觉得最好的入门中文教材。
  - 5 你刚去过的旅游地点。

# **Enjoy Chinese**



家: home, family

室: room

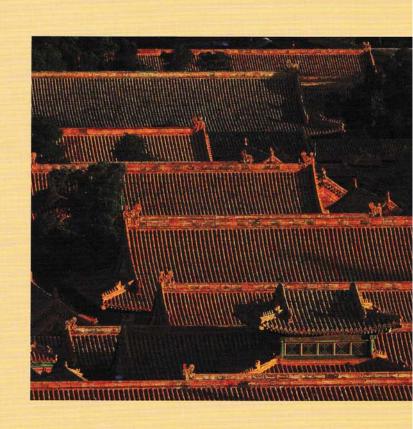
宅: residence

Since ancient times, the radical has always indicated the meaning of house. Indeed, it looks like the roof of a house. Can you tell how the meaning of the following characters came into being?

安=→+女: peace

灾 = 一+火: disaster

宫= 一 + 口 + 口: palace



shì zài wăngshàng 我是在网 ding de piào I booked the ticket online.

# Vocabulary and listening

- Work in pairs. Match the words with their meanings.
  - 1 登机牌
  - 2 登机口
  - 3 机场
  - 4 机舱
  - 5 托运行李
  - 6 随身行李

- a aircraft cabin
- **b** airport
- c boarding gate
- d carry-on luggage
- e boarding pass
- f check-in luggage
- Work in pairs. Match the words with the airport signs.









- a 中转
- b 行李提取
- c出发
- d 到达



- Steve is going on a business trip. Listen to his conversation with the check-in staff at the airport and answer the questions.
  - 1 史蒂夫要去哪里?
  - 2 史蒂夫是怎么订的票?
  - 3 史蒂夫得到靠窗口的座位了吗?



史蒂夫: 您好。我想办理登机手续。

值机员: 您好。请出示您的护照。请

问您去哪里?

史蒂夫: 这是我的护照。我去内蒙古

通辽, 在呼和浩特转机。

值机员:好的,谢谢。

史蒂夫: 我是在网上订的票, 需要我把

订票用的信用卡拿出来吗?

值机员: 不用了, 谢谢。您乘坐的航

班12点45分起飞。请问您有要

托运的行李吗?

史蒂夫: 有,就一件。

值机员: 麻烦您把行李放在传送带

上。对不起, 您的行李超重

了。超了三公斤。

史蒂夫: 是吗! 那您等我一下, 我把

几本书拿出来。书挺重的。

(史蒂夫从托运行李中拿出一些书)

史蒂夫: 现在可以了吗?



值机员:可以了。谢谢您。

史蒂夫: 请问, 我能要一个靠窗

户的座位吗?

值机员:请稍等,我看一下。对

不起, 现在只有靠过道

的座位了。

史蒂夫: 没关系, 那就靠过道吧。

值机员: 这是您的登机牌和行李

票。由22号登机口,12点15分开始登机。机舱门

在起飞前15分钟关闭。到

了呼和浩特, 您还需要转

机,请带好随身行李。

史蒂夫: 在呼和浩特转机, 我需

要取托运行李吗?

值机员: 不需要。您到了通辽再

取托运行李。

史蒂夫: 那太好了。谢谢!

值机员: 祝您旅途愉快!

## 生词 New words

dēngjī 登机	board (a	chāozhòng 超重	overweight
shǒuxù	plane)	kào Ł	by the side of,
手续 zhíjīyuán	procedure	靠 chuānghu	lean against
值机员	check-in staff	窗户	window
chūshì	1,000	zuòwèi	
出示	show	座位	seat
Nèiměnggǔ 内蒙古	Inner Mongolia	guòdào 过道	aisle
Tōngliáo		dēngjīpái	
通辽	Tongliao	登机牌	boarding pass
Hū hé hào tè		xínglipiào	
呼和浩特	Hohhot	行李票	luggage ticket
zhuănji	transfer	yóu	
转机	(flight)	由	through, via
dìngpiào		dēngjīkŏu	
订票	book tickets	登机口	boarding gate
xìnyòngkă		cāng	
信用卡	credit card	舱	cabin
chéngzuò		guānbì	
乘坐	take, ride	关闭	close
hángbān		suíshēn xíngli	carn/-on
航班	flight	随身行李	carry-on luggage
qĭfēi		qŭ	
起飞	take off	取	pick up
tuōyùn	check in	lătú yúkuài	have a pleasant
托运	(luggage)	旅途愉快	journey
chuánsòngdà			
传送带	conveyor belt		

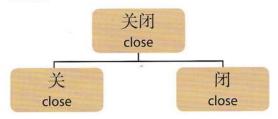
#### Complete the passage.

史蒂夫	的飞机」		_起飞	。他要把	乇运
	_件行李	。他的	<b>勺托运</b>	行李超重	巨了
	_公斤。	史蒂夫	<b></b> 卡得去		号登
机口,		开始	登机,	机舱门	起飞前
	_关闭。				

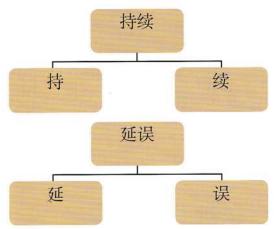
Match the verbs w	ith the nouns to make phr	ases.	Pronunciation and speaking
1 托运	a 机票		I Listen to the conversations.
2 订	b 行李	I <sub>1</sub>	1 一请问您有要托运的行李吗?
3 办理	c机舱门		一有,就一件。
4 关闭	d 登机手续		一有,就一什。 一请把行李放在传送带上。
discuss their mean 需要我把订票户  Check the correct  中華夫托  全史蒂夫把  为他坐飞  安蒂夫的  中華夫的  中華夫的	用的信用卡拿出来吗? statements. 运了两件行李。 几本书从托运行李里等 机的时候想看看书。 座位靠窗户。 机的时候得取他的托	拿出来,因运行李。	2 一请问,我能要一个靠窗户的座位吗? 一请稍等,我看一下。对不起,现在只有靠过道的座位了。 一没关系,那就靠过道吧。 3 —对不起,您的行李超重了。 —现在可以了吗? —可以了。谢谢您。  Now work in pairs. Act out the conversations.
	airport announcements. Lo ne following will be annou		
. 出发	到达 登机口	航班号	Work in pairs and act out a conversation at the airport check-in counter. Include the following:
北京	乎和浩特		<ul><li> ask for an aisle seat</li><li> check in two pieces of luggage</li></ul>
Now listen and co	nplete the table.		CHINESE TO GO  At the airport
THE PERSON AND THE PE	wo announcements and co	omplete the	Xiànzài kěyǐ le ma
sentences.	(大字) 本	Trate	现在 可以 了 吗? Is it all right now?
	· 位请注意: 由 次航班将于	_ 飞来	Qǐngwèn wǒ néng yào yígè kào 请问,我 能 要 一个 靠
			chuanghu de zuówei ma
	注意,由于	原因 含无法	窗户 的 座位 吗? Excuse me, could I have a window seat?
是一个人的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们的人们	从前往各地	All the second s	Zhùnín lắtú yúkuài
1 1 1 B 上秦 1812年 1813年 1813年	。请您注意机场广播	Hard of State of Stat	祝您 旅途 愉快! Have a pleasant journey!
Now listen again a	nd check.		

# Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Look at this two-character word.



Now write down the meaning of each character in these two-character words.



What feature do these two-character words share? Think of similar two-character words.

Look at the two-character words and complete the sentences.

降雨	rainfall	The meaning of 降 is
降雪	snowfall	
超重	overweight	The meaning of 超 is
超过	exceed,	
	surpass	
市区	city area	The meaning of 区 is
地区	area	
校区	campus	
	area	

Work in pairs. Look at the map of China. Match the names to the right places.



a 北京 b 天津 c 河北 d 山西 e 内蒙古



- Read the airport website announcement and answer the questions.
  - 1 What is the announcement about?
  - 2 What is the current weather like at the airport?
  - 3 What does the website suggest travellers do?



本机场现在(11月7日10:50)出现暴风雪天气,部分航班将受到影响。请您注意天气变化,及时与您乘坐的航空公司联系,或者拨打机场服务热线。



### Read the news report and check the correct statements.

- □ 1 暴雨造成飞机延误和高速公路关闭。
- □ 2 冷空气主要影响了华北地区。
- □ 3 冷空气造成气温低、风大。
- □ 4 首都机场一共有500多个航班受到天气的影响。
- □ 5 根据中央气象台的预报,这种天气会持续到下周末。

# 气象新闻

3



受冷空气的影响,本周二我国华北地区出现大范围降雪,造成 多个机场和多条高速公路关闭。根据中央气象台的预报,明后天华 北地区仍将有大雪,部分地区还会有暴风雪。

周一晚,北京市区的风力在6级以上;两天的时间,北京的气温从5℃降到了-15℃。一位北京市民说:"今天真冷啊!早上一出门就觉得风很大,刚走了几分钟,就冷得受不了了!"

北京市的道路交通受到降雪影响。暴风雪中,有数百名交通警察 在主要道路上指挥交通。从周二下午到晚上,大雪造成首都国际机场 超过300个航班延误,240个航班被取消。

北京周围的地区,内蒙古、山西、河北和天津也受到了暴风雪的影响。共有11条主要高速公路关闭。根据中央气象台的预报,冷空气的影响将持续到下周一。

### 生词 New words

běn		fànwéi		zhǔyào	
本	this	范围	range	主要	main, major
chūxiàn		jiàngxuě		zhĭhuī	
出现	appear	降雪	snowfall	指挥	direct
bàofēngxuě		zàochéng		shŏudū	
暴风雪	snowstorm	造成	cause	首都	capital
biànhuà		Zhōngyāng Qìxiàngtái		chāoguò	
变化	change	中央 气象台	National Meteorological Centre	超过	exceed, surpass
jíshí		yùbào	Centre	yánwù	Surpass
及时	in time	预报	forecast	延误	delay
hángköng göngsi		réng		qŭxiāo	
航空 公司	airlines	仍	still	取消	cancel
bōdǎ		shìqū		zhōuwéi	
拨打	dial	市区	city area	周围	surroundings
rèxiàn		fēnglì		Shānxī	
热线	hotline	风力	wind force	山西	Shanxi
qìxiàng		shòubuliăo		Héběi	
气象	weather	受不了	cannot bear	河北	Hebei
xīnwén		dàolù		Tiānjīn	
新闻	news	道路	road	天津	Tianjin
Huáběi		jĭngchá		chíxù	
华北	North China	警察	police .	持续	last

- Choose the best title for the news report.
  - A 冷空气影响华北
  - B首都机场有暴风雪
  - C北京降雪

出门。

Complete the sentences with the words and expressions from the news report.

1	气象台的, 上海市区	100
	今明两天都有大雨。道路交通、地铁	
	和机场航班有可能会受到。	
2	由于天气原因,航班有可能被	
	甚至,请您注意天气变化,	
	及时与航空公司。	
3	大范围的降雪 多条高速公路	
	0	
4	听说今天晚上气温将15℃以	

下,会冷得\_\_\_\_,最好在家里别

- Read again and write in the boxes the correct categories of the sentences.
  - a 天气的总的影响 b 天气的具体影响
  - □ 1 受冷空气的影响,本周二我国华北 地区出现大范围降雪,造成多个机 场和多条高速公路关闭。
  - □ 2 从周二下午到晚上,大雪造成首都 国际机场超过300个航班被延误, 240个航班取消。
  - □ 3 周一晚,北京市区的风力在6级以上;两天的时间,北京的气温从5℃降到了-15℃。
- Think about the worst experience you ever had involving bad weather and rewrite the sentences in Activity 8.

Now write a news report about the experience. Use the text on page 72 and the sentences you wrote to help you.

## Language in use

Expressing influences 要.....影响 using

### Look at the sentences.

Subject	受(到)	Source	的影响	Other
去英国 的航班	受到了	今天天气	的影响。	
	受	哥哥	的影响,	他也学 中文。
	受	西方文化	的影响,	很多中国 人喜欢摇 滚乐。
我	受	父母	的影响	最大。
在中国学习,我当然	受到	中国文化	的影响。	

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- 2 受到 is a verb + complement structure, similar to 看到 and 做完.
- 3 The source of influence has to be a person.
- Work in pairs. Talk about the influences in your life using 受·····的影响. Include the following sources:
  - · a person
  - a book
  - a culture
  - · a film

Noun phrases with

以

- Look at the sentences. Underline the noun phrases with 以.
  - 1 很多年以前,我在中国生活。
  - 2 今天的气温在30℃以上。
  - 3 这个城市的人口在100万以下。
  - 4 回家以后,给我打电话。
  - 5 除了我跟他以外,还有三个人。
  - 6 作业不太多,两个小时以内可 以做完。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 以 means "from this point on".
- The noun phrase always ends with 以.
- 3 以 does not have any specific meaning.
- Translate the sentences using 以-phrases.
  - 1 The textbook costs more than \$50.
  - 2 If there are fewer than six students, we have to cancel the class.
  - 3 The airport is not far from here. You can get there within 30 minutes.
  - 4 Apart from his family, there will be about 20 friends attending his birthday party.
  - 5 After graduating from college, he moved back to California.
  - 6. Before you speak, think carefully about what you want to say.

Expressing "unbearable" using

受不了

Stating extreme consequences using

造成

#### Look at the sentences.

受不了 as a verb or stative verb:

- 1 我受不了这么大的风!
- 2 真受不了! 这么多作业!
- 3 大家都受不了这个老师说话的口音。

受不了 as a descriptive complement:

- 1 天气冷得受不了!
- 2 我饿得受不了! 我们快吃饭吧!
- 3 走路走了一天, 他们累得受不了。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 As a verb, 受不了 means "cannot tolerate". As a stative verb, 受不了 means "unbearable".
- □ 2 The structure "Adj + 得 + 受不了" means "it is so...that one cannot bear it".
- □ 3 受不了 can be used in both a negative and positive sense.

## Make complaints about the following using 受不了.

同屋 我真受不了我的同屋。他总是不洗碗!

租房 现在租房的价格贵得让人受不了!

1 商场

2 地铁

3 饭馆

4 交通

5 天气

6 网站

### Look at the sentences.

Topic	造成	Result
暴风雪	造成	公路关闭。
雷阵雨	造成	航班延误。
学生人数不够	造成	这门课取消。
持续了一个 星期的降雨	造成	这个地区的水灾 (flood)。
父母这么做,	给孩子 造成	不好的影响。
人口过多	会造成	很多社会问题。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 造成 means "cause, make happen".
- What appears after 造成 is usually a noun phrase indicating some kind of result, which can be either good or bad.
- □ 3 What appears before 造成 is a direct cause of a severe result.

### Complete the sentences.

\_\_\_\_\_\_造成学生上课听不懂。

2 \_\_\_\_\_\_造成交通问题。

3 \_\_\_\_\_\_造成航班取消。

造成这个饭馆关门。

5 警察太少,造成\_\_\_\_。

6 大雨造成

Turn to page 188 for grammar reference.

# Communication activity

### Work in pairs.

**Student A:** You are a Chinese visitor to England. Complete the passport and the boarding pass. You can invent information you wish.

护照	护照号 <b>G</b>
	姓名
照片	性别
	年月日出生

中国国	际航空/	同	WHE	登机牌
航班号	CA		出发	年
登机口				月
登机时间	16:40			日

**Student B:** You are helping Student A to fill the customs declaration form at the airport. Ask him/her questions about the following information.

- 1 Last name
- 2 First name
- 3 Date of birth
- 4 Passport number
- 5 Destination country
- 6 Flight number
- 7 Purpose of travel

Now ask and answer in Chinese.



Turn to pages 174 and 180 for more speaking practice.

## Review and practice

- Underline the words that express approximation of a number in the sentences.
  - 1 我们学校学中文的人有50人左右。
  - 2 北京的常住人口已经超过了两千万。
  - 3 考试很容易,大部分人不到两个小时 就写完了。
  - 4 做这个菜很麻烦,要四个多小时。
  - 5 如果你每天练习,一个星期以内可以 学会开车。

Now make sentences with these expressions.

## Cultural corner

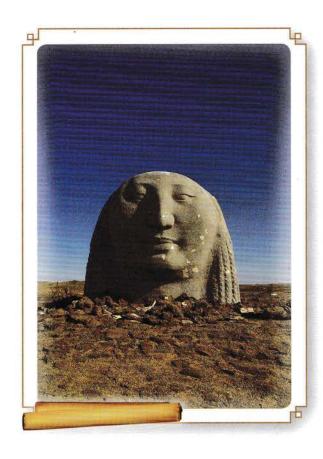
# Mongols in China

Around six million Mongolian people live across China, forming one of the largest ethnic minorities in the country. Most of them live in Inner Mongolia and the adjacent provinces of northern China. The traditionally nomadic Mongolian lifestyle has been heavily influenced by the Han Chinese and has undergone major transformations during the process of modernization. Nevertheless, the Mongols in China have preserved their own spoken and written language, culture and traditions.

The Nadam (meaning "recreation" or "game") Fair is an annual Mongolian festival featuring all sorts of sports, entertainment and spiritual events. The fair is usually held between July and August, when the grass is still green and the livestock are strong. The major sports events include horse racing, wrestling and archery, three essential skills all Mongolian men are expected to master. There are also large-scale sacrificial ceremonies, theatrical performances and bonfire parties with people singing, dancing and drinking throughout the night.

### Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 路上的警察有40人\_\_\_\_。
- a 左右 b 多 c 超过
- 2请您及时\_\_\_\_\_客服联系。
- a 给 b 与 c 在
- 3 父亲的影响,我选择了 历史专业。
- a在 b受 c跟
- 4 您乘坐的 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 号是多少?
  - a 航班 b 航空 c 航海
- 5 上课的时候我喜欢坐 \_\_\_\_\_门 的座位。
  - a 近
- b 在 c 靠
- 6 回国以后,我打算 学中文。
- a 持续 b 继续 c 手续



### Read the weather forecast for Shanghai.



# 上海未来三天天气预报(06-30 08:00发布)

日期 天气现		气现象	气温	风向	风力	
1日	白天	-	雷阵雨	高温26℃	东风	3-4级
星期日	夜间	*	多云	低温19℃	东风	2-3级
2日	白天	9	大雨	高温27℃	东南风	3-4级
星期一	夜间		小雨	低温20℃	东南风	3-4级
3日	白天	嫌	晴	高温26℃	东风	4-5级
星期二	夜间		阴	低温20℃	东风	2-3级

Now work in pairs. Plan a visit to these places in Shanghai from 1 to 3 July. Make sure you take the weather into account.

- Shanghai Museum
- · Renmin Park
- the night market to taste local food
- · shops in Nanjing Road
- · Zhouzhuang village
- · the railway station on arrival
- · the airport on departure
- Write a weather report for your city for the next three days. Advise on places to visit.

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

暴风雪	bàofēngxuě	n.	snowstorm	气象	qìxiàng	n.	weather
本	běn	pron.	this	取	qŭ	v.	*
	biànhuà	v.	change	取消	qŭxiāo	v.	cancel
拨打	bōdǎ	v.	dial	热线	rèxiàn	n.	hotline
舱	cāng	n.	cabin	仍	réng	adv.	
	chāoguò	v.	exceed, surpass	市区	shìqū	n.	city area
超重	chāozhòng	v.	overweigh	首都	shŏudū	n.	all
乘坐	chéngzuò	v.		手续	shŏuxù	n.	procedure
持续	chíxù	v.	last '		shòubuliǎo	v.	cannot bear
出示	chūshì	v.	show	随身行李	suíshēn xíngli		carry-on luggage
	chūxiàn	v.	appear	托运	tuōyùn	v.	check in (luggage)
传送带	chuánsòngdài	n.	conveyor belt	新闻	xīnwén	n.	33.3
窗户	chuānghu	n.			xìnyòngkǎ	n.	credit card
道路	dàolù	n.	road	行李票	xínglipiào	n.	luggage ticket
登机	dēngjī	v.	board (a plane)	延误	yánwù	v.	delay
登机口	dēngjīkŏu	n.		由	yóu	prep.	
登机牌	dēngjīpái	n.	boarding pass	预报	yùbào	n./v.	forecast
订票	dìngpiào	v.	book tickets	造成	zàochéng	v.	cause
	fànwéi	n.	range	值机员	zhíjīyuán	n.	check-in staff
风力	fēnglì	n.	wind force	指挥	zhĭhuī	V.	direct
关闭	guānbì	v.		周围	zhōuwéi	n.	
过道	guòdào	n.	aisle		zhǔyào	adj.	main, major
	hángbān	n.	flight	<del>**</del> 转机	zhuănjī	V.	transfer (flight)
航空公司	hángköng göngsi		airlines	座位	zuòwèi	n.	
华北	Huáběi	n.	North China	河北	Héběi	n.	Hebei
及时	jíshí	adv.		呼和浩特	Hūhéhàotè	n.	Hohhot
降雪	jiàngxuě	n.	snowfall	内蒙古	Nèiměnggŭ	n.	Inner Mongolia
警察	jĭngchá	n.		山西	Shānxī	n.	Shanxi
	kào	v.	by the side of, lean against	天津	Tiānjīn	n.	Tianjin
旅途愉快	lŭtú yúkuài		have a pleasant	通辽	Tōngliáo	n.	Tongliao
n (2204000 0)	qĭfēi	v.	journey take off	中央气象台	Zhōngyāng Qìxiàngtái		National Meteorological Centre
70 # 11 1 #	1						



# Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Write down the names of the rooms in an apartment. Use the characters below to help you.

室厅间房

Work in pairs. Look at the photo and describe the furniture. Use the words in the box.

 床
 床单
 被子
 枕头

 窗户
 空调
 椅子



- Steve has arrived at the host family's apartment. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 谁去机场接的史蒂夫?
  - 2 老方家一共有几口人?
  - 3 在最后,老方因为什么觉得不好 意思?

老方: 我们回来了。这是我们的客人 史蒂夫。

方妻:辛苦了,史蒂夫,快请进。

老方: 这是我爱人李梅。

史蒂夫: 您好, 很抱歉飞机晚了这么多。

方妻: 没关系,安全到了就好。

老方: 这是方青, 我们的独生女。

史蒂夫: 你好,方青! 很高兴认识你。

方青: 你好, 史蒂夫。

老方: 你们先聊, 我去拿行李。

史蒂夫: 您太客气了, 我自己来吧。

方妻: 没事,让他去吧。我带你去看

看房间。

史蒂夫: 好的, 谢谢。

方妻: 我们家不大,客厅和饭厅在一起。这边走。厨房在右边。左起。这边走。厨房在右边。左边是卫生间,也是浴室。这是你的房间,旁边是方青的房间,对面是我们的卧室。不好意思,这里条件挺简单的。你的床单和被子是刚换的。桌子跟椅子给你办公.这个是垃圾桶。

史蒂夫: 这个房间真不错。

方妻: 这是你的毛巾跟牙刷, 都是新

的。这是空调的遥控器。

史蒂夫: 好的, 您真是太周到了。

方妻: 哪里哪里。我们去客厅喝点

茶吧。



# (在客厅)

老方: 史蒂夫, 你的普通话很标准啊。比我们说得好。

史蒂夫: 您过奖了。

老方: 你父母是做什么的?

史蒂夫: 我父亲是律师, 母亲是教师。

老方: 很好的职业啊! 他们收入很

高吧?

方青:爸爸,我们英语老师说问西

方人这个问题很不礼貌!

老方: 是吗! 我不知道, 真不好意思!

史蒂夫: 没事没事, 其实我也不知道

他们赚多少钱。

Draw a floor plan of the Fangs' apartment.

## 生词 New words

kè rén		lājītŏng	
客人	guest	垃圾桶	rubbish bin
xīnkǔ 辛苦 àirén	go to great trouble	kōngtiáo 空调 yáokòngqì	air conditioner
爱人 bàogiàn	spouse	遥控器 zhōudào	remote control
抱歉	be sorry	周到	considerate
ānquán 安全	safe	guòjiǎng 过奖	flatter
dúshēngnǔ 独生女	single child (girl)	lùshī 律师	lawyer
liáo 聊	chat	jiàoshī 教师	teacher
kèqi 客气	polite, courteous	zhíyè 职业	profession
yùshì 浴室	bathroom	shōurù 收入	income
tiáojiàn 条件	condition	lǐmào 礼貌	polite
gāng 刚	just, just now	qíshí 其实	as a matter of fact
huàn 换	change	zhuàn 赚	earn
yǐzi 椅子	chair	en la car	

			4442		
4	Comp	lete	the	sentences	s.

1	老方的妻子叫, 老方的女
	儿叫。
2	史蒂夫的房间里有一张床,床上
	有刚换的 和。
	房间里还有办公用的 和
3	老方觉得史蒂夫的普通话很
	o
4	史蒂夫的父亲的职业是,
	母亲的职业是。
5	老方的女儿告诉老方,问西方人的
	ultr & T



You are going to hear some real estate agents talking about apartments to rent. Look at the table and predict how the rooms are described.

地点	房间	多少 钱	其他
离市中 心不远	两个卧室		没有,也没有
	一室一厅		有、 ,还有 
离		2500	还有 十么
很近		2300	的都得自己买
旁边就是			
和超市			特别小

Now listen and complete the table.



Work in pairs. Listen again and check your answers. Talk about what kinds of people would likely rent them.

# Pronunciation and speaking



Match the expressions to make exchanges.

- 1 很高兴认识你! a 没事没事。
- 2 您辛苦了。
- 4 真抱歉。
- 5 太不好意思了。 e 没关系。
- b 哪里哪里。
- 3 您真是太周到了。c 不辛苦, 不辛苦。
  - d 认识你我也很高兴。

Now listen and check.

Work in pairs. Discuss how to start a conversation with a person you meet for the first time at a casual party. Check the best topics.

□ 天气	□衣服	□兴趣爱好
丁作	一旅游	□ Iltr λ

□ 年龄 □ 孩子

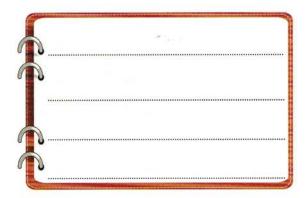
□ 男朋友/女朋友/妻子/先生

Now act out a conversation at a party.

Polite ex	pressions
Nín tài kèqi le	
您 太 客气 了,	It's so kind of you.
Wǒ zìjǐ lái ba 我自己来吧。	I can do it myself.
	You've really
Nín zhēnshì tài zhōudào le	thought of
您 真是 太 周到 了	o everything.
Nín guòjiǎng le 您 过奖 了。	I'm flattered.

# Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Talk about how to write a diary entry. Write down the essential components in Chinese.



Use the words on the left to work out the meanings of those on the right.

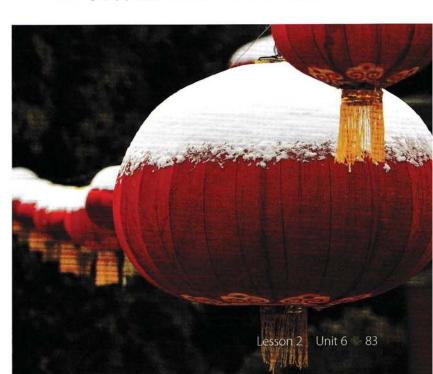
THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA	And the second second second
借 borrow 住 live	借住
碗 bowl 筷子 chopsticks	碗筷
幸运 lucky 幸好 fortunately	不幸
忙 busy 停 stop	忙个不停

Now work in pairs and check your answers.

Work in pairs. Make a list of the housework a family must do and discuss how the members might share it.



- Read Steve's diary entry on page 84 and check the
  - true statements.
  - □ 1 史蒂夫喜欢他借住的这家人。
  - □ 2 方家是少数民族。
  - □ 3 史蒂夫明天要去一个小学采访。



## 史蒂夫的一篇日记

今天到了通辽。本来昨天就 应该到,结果由于暴风雪,飞机 延误了 12个小时。我借住的这 家人特别热情,让我觉得像在家 里一样。方先生去机场接我,还 帮我拿行李。方太太好像总是护 个不是洗碗做饭、就是却 中无衣。当然我也会帮忙做家务, 比方说晒衣服,收拾碗筷,打扫 自己的房间什么的。他们的独生 女方青有点害羞,不过,她长得 可真像王玉啊……

通辽在内蒙古的东边,离吉林省和辽宁省都很近,人口有三百万,有很多少数民族。方家是汉族人,他们说普通话的时候带一点当地的口音,有时候挺难懂的。不过我想我应该很快就会习惯的。以前马克跟我说英文的

11月25日 星期三 大风 时候, 我也有不明白的地方, 因 为澳大利亚英语跟英国英语有时 候用词和发音挺不一样的。

明天我就要开始工作了。我会去一个附近的小学采访他们的校长、老师和学生, 再拍些照片。中国北方小城的小学跟其他地方的小学会有点不一样吧。希望一切顺利。可惜现在是冬天——要是在夏天, 内蒙古的大草原应该非常美。

### Answer the questions.

- 1 史蒂夫的飞机为什么延误了?
- 2 史蒂夫对方家三个人的看法都是怎样的?
- 3 为什么以前史蒂夫有时候听不懂马克 说的英文?
- 4 方先生问史蒂夫父母的收入,史蒂夫觉得奇怪吗?
- 5 史蒂夫为什么希望现在是夏天?

## 生词 New words

shài 晒	line dry (clothes)	fāyīn 发音	pronunciation		
扫地	sweep the floor	用词	wording, phrasing	草原	grassland
săodì		yòng cí		căoyuán	
做饭	cook	明白	understand	可惜	it is a pity
zuòfàn		míngbái		kěxī	311100011
xǐwǎn 洗碗	wash dishes	xíguàn 习惯	get used to	shùnlì 顺利	go well, smooth
máng gè bùtíng 忙 个不停	like to keep busy	kǒuyīn ' 口音	accent	xiàozhǎng 校长	headmaster
hǎoxiàng 好像	seem to	shǎoshù mínzú 少数 民族	ethnic minority	căifăng 采访	interview (for media)
jiē 接	pick up	bǎiwàn 百万	million	qíguài 奇怪	strange
rèqíng 热情	hospitable	Liáoníng 辽宁	Liaoning	yàoburán 要不然	otherwise
jiè zhù 借住	stay at sb else's place	shěng 省	province	yǐnsī 隐私	privacy
jiéguŏ 结果	the result is	Jílín 吉林	Jilin	gèrén 个人	personal
běnlái 本来	originally	hàixiū 害羞	shy	xìnghǎo 幸好	fortunately
piān 篇	piece	dăsăo 打扫	clean up	liáotiān 聊天	chat

- Read the passage again and answer the questions about Tongliao.
  - 1 通辽在什么地方?
  - 2 通辽的人口有多少?
  - 3 通辽的人有什么特点?

Now answer the questions for your hometown.

## Read the following part of Steve's diary again.

今天聊天的时候,方先生问我父母一个 月赚多少钱……方青说她的英文老师也 说过这个问题,方先生知道以后还觉得 挺不好意思的。

Now help Steve write about how he was shown the rooms by Ms Fang. Use the conversation in Activity 3, Lesson 1 to help you.

方先生帮我去拿行李的时候,方太太……

Describing impressions using

好像

#### Look at the sentences.

- 今天他好像不太高兴。
- 2 好像今天会下雨。
- 3 史蒂夫好像是英国人,不是美国人。
- 4 好像他已经结婚,有孩子了。
- 5 永民好像很害羞。
- 6 阿曼达喝咖啡好像不喜欢加糖。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 好像 either appears at the very beginning of the sentence, or right after the topic.
- □ 2 好像 means "it seems that" or "seem".
- □ 3 好像 is used to express the speaker's certainty.
- Work in pairs. Talk about your impression of the following topics.

	14	+	-	
1	关	6	木	П
-	/	1	100	ч

2 花木兰

3上海

4内蒙古

李小龙:李小龙好像是在美国上的大学。 好像他是在美国出生,在香港去世的。 Expressing causal relations using

让

#### Look at the sentences.

Topic	让	Clause
他太热情,	让	我觉得不好 意思。
改革开放	让	中国的发展越来越快。
学习中国 历史,	让	我对中文越来 越有兴趣。
开了空调,	(让)	屋子很快凉下 来了。
收入高,	(让)	他可以常常出 国旅游。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- ☐ 1 1 roughly means "let" or "make".
- 2 1 has to be followed by a complete clause.
- ☐ 3 What appears after is usually a negative effect of the cause before i...

# ■ Translate the sentences into Chinese using † .

- Being a teacher allows him to travel a lot in the summer.
- 2 The weather made her feel very uncomfortable.
- 3 The birthday present you bought me makes me very happy.
- 4 Convenient transportation is leading to the fast economic development of this city.
- 5 The film made me cry.

**Expressing limited** choices using

不是…… 就是……

#### Look at the sentences.

Other	不是	A	就是	В
在飞机上我	不是	睡觉,	就是	看电影。
这次采访	不是	你去,	就是	我去。
我们今年 旅游	不是	去加拿大,	就是	去美国。
交作业的时间,	不是	明天,	就是	后天。

#### Now check the correct statements.

- □ 1 不是·····就是····· means "if not A, then B".
- The choices are limited to either A or B.
- □ 3 What appears after 不是 has to be a verb.

### Complete the sentences.

- 1每年圣诞节,我们不是\_\_\_\_\_\_就是
- 2 选择专业的时候, 我不是 就是
- 3 认识新朋友,我不是说 就是说
- 4 西方人知道的中国电影明星很少,不是 \_\_\_\_\_, 就是 \_\_\_\_\_。
- 5 安娜是个好学生。下课以后,她不是在 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_就是在 \_\_\_\_\_。

Sentence-initial adverbs

幸好、可惜、其实

0	Look at t	he sentences.				
	Adverb	Clause				
	幸好	我没有告诉她这件事。				
	幸好	我带了伞。				
	可惜	你不能来。				
	可惜	我没有上那门课。				
	其实	我一点儿也不喜欢书法。				
	其实	花木兰不是一个真正的历史人物。				
	Now check the correct explanations.					
	<ul> <li>1 The sentence-initial adverb is used to express the speaker's tone or opinions about the fact stated in the clause.</li> <li>2 Usually there will be more contextual information revealing why the speaker feels that way.</li> </ul>					
	3 These adverbs can be moved to the end of the sentence.					
2	Complete the conversations.					
	1 A: 糟糕!下雨了。 B: 幸好。 2 A: 怎么办?明天有中文考试!					
	B: 幸	好。				

- 3 A: 你想不想跟我一起去伦敦玩玩?
  - B: 可惜
- 4 A: 我们出去看电影吧。
  - B: 可惜
- 5 A: 听说你很喜欢晚上出去玩。 B: 其实
- 6 A: 你开车应该开得不错吧? B: 其实
- Turn to page 189 for grammar reference.

## Communication activity

#### Work in pairs.

**Student A:** You are an international student in Beijing. You have already rented a two-bedroom apartment, and you are looking for a roommate. Tell Student B about:

- · the apartment
- · yourself
- · your ideal roommate
- · your contact information

**Student B:** You are new to Beijing and looking for an apartment to share with another international student. Ask Student A about:

- · distribution of household chores
- · how the rent will be split
- details about the apartment, such as location, furniture, etc.

Now discuss sharing the apartment and draft an agreement.

Present your agreement to the class and vote for the best one.



Turn to pages 174 and 180 for more speaking practice.

## Review and practice

Complete the passage with the words in the box.

语言 方言 口音 发音 用词 北京话 上海话 普通话 标准

大部分的中国人会说至少两种:
普通话和一种。比方说,上海
人会说。在
学校里,一般老师要求学生说。
电视上的新闻也都是用。可是
人们平常说话常常用。很多时
候, 跟 不但
不同, 也常常很不一样, 所以
很多人说的普通话不, 带有当
地的。很多人以为北京话就是
的普通话,其实不是,特别是
老北京的, 总是带着很重的儿
化音。

## Cultural corner

# Gift-giving in Chinese Culture

As in the West, gifts in China are given on special occasions and as an expression of gratitude. However, there are many differences which may complicate the exchange of gifts.

Firstly, it is usual for gifts to be presented and received with both hands, as this shows mutual respect. Gifts are commonly wrapped in red and gold, as these colours symbolize good luck.

When giving gifts, there are certain taboos that should be avoided. For example, it is inadvisable to give knives or scissors, as this could be interpreted as a desire to "cut" a friendship. Other examples of unsuitable gifts include clocks and umbrellas; as the Chinese word for "clock" sounds similar to the word for "death" or "end", whilst the Chinese word for "umbrella" sounds similar to the word "lose".

If several gifts are given, it is important to note that six, eight and nine are lucky numbers.

Finally, in Chinese culture it is considered polite to return favours and kindnesses, so if given a gift, it is often best to show your appreciation by reciprocating.

Write a description of your room. Try to use as many of the words in the box as possible.

房间 桌子 椅子 床 床单 被子 垃圾桶 空调 卧室 卫生间 打扫 收拾 电视 遥控器 毛巾 牙刷 隐私 客厅 安全 条件

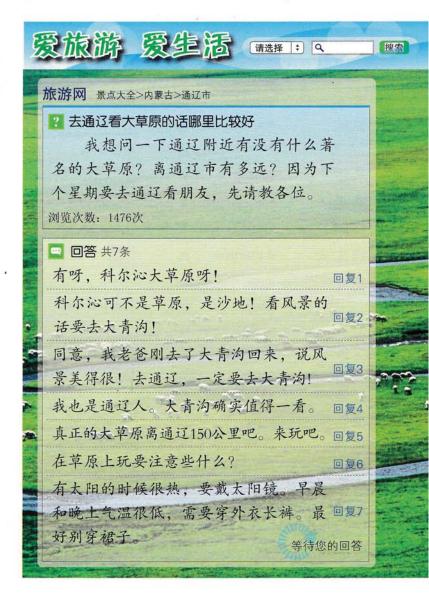
- Complete the sentences with the correct words.
  - 1 没想到今天有历史考试。 我昨天晚上看了书。

    - a 幸好 b 可惜
- c其实
- 2 坐飞机以前, 我得\_\_\_\_\_\_行李。
  - a 打扫
- b 收拾 c 晒
- 3 我的宿舍 很糟糕。四个人 一个房间,也没有空调。
- a 条件 b 交通 c 安全
- 4 上大学你学什么,常常跟你大学 \_\_\_\_\_以后的\_\_\_\_\_没有关系。
  - a 职业; 毕业 b 毕业; 职业
- 5 买这么贵的东西, 您真是太 了。

  - a 客气 b 礼貌 c 周到



Read the online discussion and answer the questions.



- 1 通辽附近的科尔沁大草原值得去吗? 为什 4?
- 2 通辽人建议去什么地方看风景?
- 3 真正的大草原离通辽多远?
- 4 在草原上玩要准备什么东西?
- 5 草原上的天气怎么样?
- Write a journal entry about your first day at a new place. Start your diary with the date. Write about:
  - the weather
- the environment
- the food
- · the people
- anything exciting (or frustrating)

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

爱人	àirén	n.	spouse	明白	míngbái	v.	understand
·	ānquán	adj	safe	篇	piān	measure	*
百万	băiwàn	num.	million	奇怪	qíguài	word adj.	
抱歉	bàoqiàn	v.		可任			as a matter of
8	běnlái	adv.	originally		qíshí	adv.	fact
采访	căifăng	v.	interview (for media)	热情	rèqing	adj.	sweep the
草原	căoyuán	n.	grassland	扫地	săodì	v.	floor
打扫	dăsăo	v.		晒	shài	v.	line dry (clothes)
独生女	dúshēngnů	n.	single child (girl)	少数民族	shǎoshù mín	zú	ethnic minority
发音	fāyīn	v.		省	shěng	n.	province
	gāng	adv.	just, just now	收入	shōurù	n.	,
个人	gèrén	n.		顺利	shùnlì	adj.	go well, smooth
过奖	guòjiǎng	V.	flatter	70.71	tiáojiàn	n.	condition
13 <del></del>	hàixiū	v.	shy	习惯	xíguàn	v.	condition
好像	hăoxiàng	adv.		洗碗	xĭwăn	<b>v.</b>	wash dishes
换	huàn	v.		The second second			
教师	jiàoshī	n.	teacher	校长	xiàozhăng	n.	headmaster
30: 44 3	jiē	v.	pick up	辛苦	xīnků	v.	go to great trouble
结果"	jiéguŏ	conj.		幸好	xìnghăo	adv.	
借住	jièzhù	v.	stay at sb else's place	遥控器	yáokòngqì	n.	remote contro
	kěxī	adj.	it is a pity	要不然	yàoburán	adv.	otherwise
客气	kèqi	adj.	polite,	椅子 隐私	yĭzi yĭnsī	n.	
客人	kèrén	n.	courteous	居词	yòngcí	n. n.	privacy wording,
	kōngtiáo	n.	air conditioner	CO. 1076 STO.	20 12		phrasing
口音	kŏuyīn	n.	accent	浴室	yùshì	n.	bathroom
垃圾桶	lājītŏng	n.	A. C.	<del></del>	zhíyè	n.	profession
	lĭmào	adj.	polite	周到	zhōudào	adj.	considerate
聊	liáo	v.	ES.USS.	赚	zhuàn	V.	
聊天	liáotiān	v. v.		-	zuòfàn	v.	cook
律师	lùshī		chat	吉林	Jílín	n.	Jilin
年列 忙个不停	máng ge bùtíng	n.	like to keep busy	辽宁	Liáoning	n.	Liaoning
			0.0				



# Vocabulary and listening

Match the words with their opposite meanings.

1紧张

a 充实

2 空虚

b落后

3 发达

c轻松

4 嘈杂

d安静

Now make a sentence with each pair of words.

Work in pairs. Put the words into the two categories. Add more words if you can.

高楼大厦	安静	嘈杂
紧张	轻松	现代
简单	方便	热闹



Now say if you'd prefer to live in a modern city or in a remote town and why.

Steve is interviewing Ms Ma, a teacher from a primary school in Tongliao. Listen to the conversation and answer the question.

马老师为什么来通辽工作?请说出三个原因。

史蒂夫: 马老师, 谢谢您接受我的采访。

听校长说, 您不是本地人?

马老师: 对,我在天津出生和长大,又

在北京上了大学。

史蒂夫: 天津和北京都是很大的城市, 可

您为什么会到通辽来工作呢?

马老师: 大学毕业的时候, 我想换个环境,

不想继续在大城市生活了。

史蒂夫: 所以您就决定到内蒙古来了?

马老师: 想换环境只是原因之一。我一

直想当老师,我觉得教育不发达的偏远地区更需要好老师.

我的工作也会更有价值。

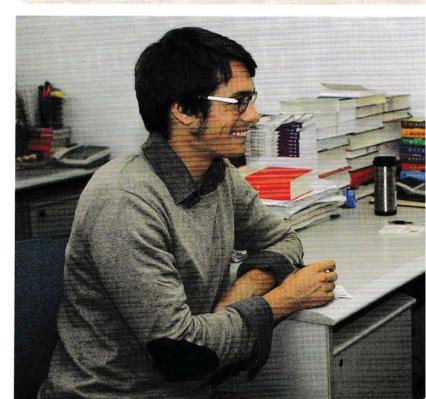
史蒂夫: 这里的生活跟大城市相比,一

定有很大差别吧?

马老师: 当然。我从小习惯了高楼大厦和

嘈杂的街道,到了这里就觉得特

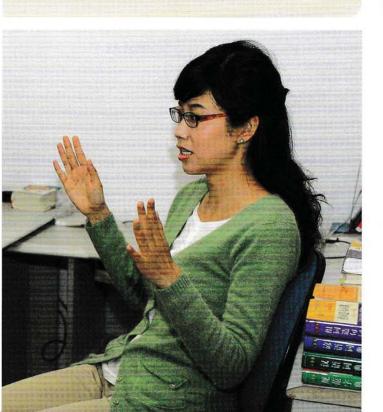
别安静。在大城市, 人们生活压



力大,精神也总是很紧张,但常常感觉心里很空虚;在 这里,我觉得生活非常充 实,也很快乐,虽然工作 也并不轻松。

史蒂夫: 那您觉得在这里生活有什么不方便的地方吗?

马老师: 这里的生活条件的确没有 大城市好,很多设施还很 落后,可是我喜欢这种简 单的生活方式。虽然我竟 单的生活方式。虽然我的 工资不高,但这里的好东 比大城市便宜,所以生活 得还不错。我特别喜欢这 里的孩子们,他们很活 泼,又非常喜欢读书,和 他们在一起我很快乐。



## 生词 New words

jiēshòu		jīngshén	
接受	accept, take	精神	spirit
běndì rén		jĭnzhāng	
本地人	local	紧张	intense
zhǎngdà		chángcháng	· Character
长大	grow up	常常	often, frequently
huánjìng		kōngxū	nequently
环境	environment	空虚	empty, void
yuányīn		chōngshí	
原因	reason	充实	full, substantial
jiàoyù		bìng bù	
教育	education	并不	not really
fādá		qīngsōng	
发达	developed	轻松	light, relaxed
piānyuǎn dìqū		díquè	
偏远地区	remote area		indeed
jiàzhí		shèshī	
价值	value	设施	facilities
cóngxiǎo	since	luòhòu	underdeveloped,
从小	childhood	落后	backward
gāolóu dàshà 言以上后	high-rises,	shēnghuó fāngshì	1:6 . 1
高楼大厦	skyscrapers	- The Court of the state of the	lifestyle
cáozá 嘈杂	noisu	gōngzī 工次	calami
jiēdào	noisy	工资 háizi	salary
街道	street	孩子	child
yālì	Street	huópō	Cinia
压力	pressure	活泼	lively
压力	pressure	旧汉	lively

#### Check the true statements.

- □ 1 马老师不是通辽本地人。
- □ 2 马老师是在天津上的大学。
- □ 3 马老师觉得好老师对教育不发达的地 区更重要。
- □ 4 马老师在通辽的工作非常轻松,所以她 很快乐。
- □ 5 马老师喜欢她现在的生活方式。
- □ 6 马老师觉得通辽的东西比北京便宜。
- □ 7 马老师喜欢跟她的学生在一起。

Work in pairs. Talk about your favourite city or town.

我特别喜欢英国的巴斯(Bath)。巴斯很安静,人们都很友好,他们的生活看起来也非常快乐和轻松……

- 6 Listen to the radio programme and answer the questions.
  - 1 今天节目的名字是什么?
  - 2 主持人请他们谈的问题是什么?
- Z Listen again and complete the sentences.
  - 1 第一位客人叫 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_,今年 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 岁。老家在 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_,她认为那里是个 \_\_\_\_\_\_,而她喜欢 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_的生活。
  - 2 第二位客人叫 \_\_\_\_\_\_,今年 \_\_\_\_\_ 岁。他原来是 \_\_\_\_\_\_人。大学毕业后 去了 \_\_\_\_\_\_,回国后选择了上海, 因为觉得 \_\_\_\_\_\_多。
  - 3 第三位客人叫 \_\_\_\_\_\_,她的 \_\_\_\_\_ 是上海人。她的爸爸说,她学的专业比较适合在上海 \_\_\_\_\_\_,所以她来了上海。毕业后,她打算在上海 先 几年。

Now work in pairs and check your answers.

## Pronunciation and speaking



- Listen to the sentences. Notice how the words make the two sentences different in each pair.
  - 1 我想当老师。 我一直想当老师。
  - 2 我习惯了高楼大厦和嘈杂的街道。 我从小习惯了高楼大厦和嘈杂的街道。
  - 3 我的工作不轻松。 我的工作并不轻松。
  - 4 这里的生活条件没有大城市好。 这里的生活条件的确没有大城市好。

Now work in pairs. Talk about the differences these words make.

Work in pairs.

**Student A:** You are Ms Ma. Ask Student B the following questions.

- 1 你是怎么到中国来的?
- 2 你喜欢北京吗?
- 3 你觉得在中国的生活跟英国相比,有 什么不同?

**Student B:** You are Steve. Answer Student A's questions.

Now change roles.

## CHINESE TO GO

2-5

Lifestyles

Tīngshuō nín bùshì běndì rén 听说,您不是本地人?

I heard that you are not a local?

Wǒ xǐhuan zhèzhǒng de shēnghuó fāngshì 我喜欢 这种 ······ 的 生活 方式

I like this ... lifestyle.

# Reading and writing

- Work in pairs. Talk about your experience of primary school.
  - 1 上小学的时候你最喜欢上什么课? 为什么?
  - 2 你最喜欢哪个老师? 为什么?
  - 3 你的学校的教学条件怎么样?有 没有电脑?
  - 4 课间休息时学生们经常做什么?
- Work in pairs. Look at the photos and talk about the similarities and differences between the two classrooms.





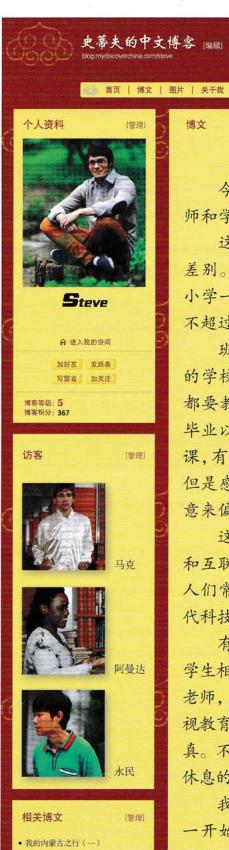
Use the words on the left to work out the meaning of the characters on the right.

操场 playground 停车场 car park 机场 airport	场 means
走访 pay a visit to 采访 interview	访 means

Look at the compound words below. Decide how they are formed and what they mean.



- See Read Steve's blog post on page 96 and answer the questions.
  - 1 How big is the average class in the primary school that Steve visited?
  - 2 In Steve's opinion, what are the causes of such a high student-teacher ratio?
  - 3 What facilities does the school have?
  - 4 What did Steve do with the pupils?



博文

# 我的内蒙古之行(一)

今天我走访了内蒙古通辽的一个小学。学校的校长、老 师和学生们都很热情, 我很喜欢他们。

这里的小学教育跟普通的英国小学教育相比, 有很大的 差别。比方说,这个小学每个班差不多有六十人,这比英国 小学一个班的学生多很多。我记得我上小学的时候,一个班 不超过二十个学生。

班里的学生这么多,原因之一是老师太少了。偏远地区 的学校很难吸引老师来教书。因为缺少老师, 所以每个老师 都要教几个年级。我采访了一位马老师, 她在北京读大学, 毕业以后来通辽教书。她一个人要教三个年级的语文和数学 课,有时候还要教美术和体育。不过马老师说,虽然工作很忙, 但是感觉很充实。真希望中国有更多的大学生像她一样,愿 意来偏远地区教书。

这个小学的教学设施也很简单。教室很小, 也没有电脑 和互联网, 学生们主要依靠传统的书本、黑板和粉笔来学习。 人们常说现代科技对学校教育的影响很大,可是在这里,现 代科技并不是必需品。

有意思的是, 跟英国的小 学生相比,这里的学生们更尊重 老师, 也更守纪律。中国人很重 视教育, 连小学生们学习都很认 真。不过他们毕竟是孩子,课间 休息的时候,都喜欢在操场上玩。

我带了糖给孩子们。他们 一开始还有点害羞,不过我们 很快就熟了。我跟他们一起做 游戏,还给他们拍了很多照片。



■ 发博文 ▼ 页面设置

• 我的内蒙古之行(三)

## 生词 New words

jìde 记得 ren	y a visit to	互联网 yīkào	Internet	重视	attach importance to
记得 ren		yīkào			artaci in portante to
Control and Contro	and a second a second and a second a second and a second	TO THE PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF		rènzhēn	
	nember	依靠	rely on	认真	earnest
quēshǎo		hēibăn		bìjìng	
缺少 lack	k of	黑板	blackboard	毕竟	after all
yǔwén		fěnbĭ		kèjiān	
语文 art	iguage, language	粉笔	chalk	课间	break (between classes)
měishù		kējì		cāochăng	
美术 arts	S	科技	science and technology	操场	playground
tĭyù		bìxūpĭn		shú	
体育 phy	ysical education	必需品	necessity	熟	familiar, acquainted
yuànyì		zūnzhòng			
愿意 wil	lling	尊重	respect		
jiàoxué		shǒu jìlù			
教学 tea	aching and learning	守纪律	disciplined		

Complete the passage with the words in the box.

必需品	落后	不但	而且
甚至	充实	重要	传统
并.	电子邮	件	

有人说, 电脑和互联网是现代生活的
。我认为,电脑和互联网虽然很
, 可是 不是生活的必需
品。在几十年前,没有互联网的时候,
人 没有什么不方便, 生
活反而更。比方说,没有互联
网,人们发不了,就得跟朋友见
面或者打电话, 是写信;没有
电脑,人们就有更多时间看书、写字,
或是出去做运动。你可能不同意我的
看法,但我认为: 不一定就是

- Read the passage again and make notes about the following features of the school.
  - 班级的大小
  - 学校的教学设施
  - 学校的老师
  - 学生和老师之间的关系
  - 学生课间的活动
- Make notes about a primary school in your home town. Use the features in Activity 7 to help you.

Now write a passage about the school.



## Language in use

### **Explicit comparisons**

跟B(相)比, A······ A比B······ 多了 A比B······ 一点/一些 A没有B那么····· A跟B有/没有·····差别

#### Look at the sentences.

- 1 跟北京比,香港的冬天暖和多了。
- 2 跟纽约比,伦敦的房子更贵。
- 3 跟北京相比,天津的人口少一些。
- 4 我的普通话(说得)没(有)他(的)那么标准。
- 5 西安没有上海那么繁华。
- 6 律师和老师的工作环境差别很大。
- 7 美国的小学跟加拿大的小学没有什么 差别。
- 8 中国城市和农村差别非常大。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 All the expressions are used to make explicit comparisons.
- □ 2 差别 is an adjective.
- □ 3 跟······相比 means "compared with".
- Write a paragraph on one of the topics below, including two examples of explicit comparisons.

大学

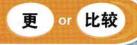
饭馆

工作

旅游地点

城市 北京和纽约: 跟北京比, 纽约……

Implicit comparisons using



#### Look at the sentences.

Other	Subject	更/ 比较	Adjective/ emotion verb
跟北京人比,	内蒙古人	更	热情。
我喜欢大城 市的繁华, 可是	我	更	喜欢在小城市生活。
(跟中国历史相比)	美国历史	比较	短。
	这个学校 的设施	比较	落后。
过生日	我	更	愿意跟朋 友在一起。
工作不忙的时候,	我	比较	喜欢去图 书馆看书。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 When 更 or 比较 is used, the comparison is often implicit.
- □ 2 Only adjectives appear after 更 or 比较.
- □ 3 比较 means "relatively", while 更 means "even more".

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 This school has a relatively small class size.
- 2 The weather is terrible today. Tomorrow will be even worse — the weather forecast says that we will have a snowstorm!
- 3 Compared to science, I like history better.
- 4 Compared with Western culture, Asian culture respects the elderly more.

Expressing something is contrary to expectation using

并不/ 并没有

#### Look at the sentences.

别以为演员的工作特 其实他们的压力非常 别轻松. 大,工作并不轻松。 本来我觉得独生子女 后来我发现并不是 特别幸福, 我想的那样。 这道题看上去很容易做,其实并不简单。 他们都觉得我爱上了她,其实我并不喜欢她。 可是我并没有去过 虽然我会说中文, 中国。

#### Now look at the conversations.

- 1 一你和阿曼达一定很熟吧? 你们都来自 巴西。
  - 一我跟阿曼达并不熟。
- 2一他是四川人,一定喜欢吃辣的。
  - 一你错了,他其实并不喜欢吃辣的。

### Check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 并不 is an adverb, placed right before the verb or adjective of the main clause.
  - 2 并不 expresses that the fact is contrary to the expectation.
- □ 3 并不 can be used without context.

### Work in pairs.

Student A: Make some general assumptions about Student B.

Student B: Tell Student A if the assumptions are correct and explain why if not.

### Now change roles.

- 一你知道这么多事,你一定去过很多地方。
- -我并没有去讨很多地方,我只是喜欢看书。

Drawing conclusions using

看来

#### Look at the sentences.

Context	看来	Clause
凯特最近的考试成	手业	她学习一定
绩都很不错。	看来	很努力。
中国人常常问别人		中国人觉得年
的年龄和收入。	看来	龄和收入不是
可于四种和权人。		个人隐私。
有什么问题他都会	看来	他很尊重父
给他的父母打电话。	有不	母的看法。
纽约房价高,东西		在细约生活
贵,人们精神紧	看来	并不容易。
张,工作压力大。		ガル台勿。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 看来 is used to draw a conclusion based on contextual evidence.
- 2 看来 is placed in front of the main clause.
- □ 3 看来 is similar to 好像 as both can be translated as "it seem that".

## Complete the conversations.

- 1 一最近他不想吃饭,也不想睡觉。
  - 一看来
- 2 一史蒂夫不在北京的时候心里总是想 着王玉。
  - 一看来
- 3 一在这儿工作我觉得特别充实。
  - 一看来
- 4 一北京和上海的大学比中国别的城 市多多了。
  - 一看来
  - Turn to page 190 for grammar reference.

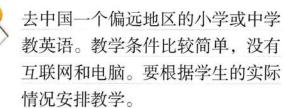
## Communication activity

Work in pairs. Look at the following two internship options.

A

在北京或上海学习中文,还可以根据自己的兴趣进行一些与中国有关的研究。学习一年,结束后写一篇研究报告。

B



Now discuss and compare the options. List their pros and cons. Try to agree on which option is better.

Present your comparison to the class.

Now vote for the best presentation.

Turn to pages 175 and 181 for more speaking practice.

## **Cultural** corner

# Chinese students and teachers

In China, teachers are highly esteemed professionals, and enjoy high social status. They are shown great respect by their students, who often stay in touch with them for many years after they graduate.

Chinese students themselves are famed for their hard work and discipline. Traditionally, academic success is thought to bring honour to a student's parents and teachers. Beyond such considerations, an increasingly competitive Complete the passage with the words in the box.

Review and practice

 一直
 并不
 的确

 总是
 从小
 毕竟

Work in pairs. Compare university life with high school life, and write five sentences about the major differences.

society means that a strong education is a necessity for social advancement.

Compared to Western methods of education, the Chinese system can seem extremely demanding. However, nowadays increasing numbers of Chinese educators are exposed to a greater variety of teaching methods from around the world, and are introducing gradual changes into Chinese classrooms.

### Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 美国的大学 \_\_\_\_ 很发达。
  - a 教育
- b 教授
- c 教学
- 2 二十世纪八九十年代,中国经济 得非常快。

  - a 发达 b 发展
- c发现
- 3 这份工作对我来说特别有。
  - a 价值
- b价钱
- c 值得
- 4 暑假到了, 我还没有什么好的计 划,觉得心里。
  - a 很充实 b 很空虚 c 压力大
- 5 真烦!外面的街道这么 , 我看不了书。
  - a 紧张 b 热闹 c 嘈杂

- 6 我记得他\_\_\_\_\_\_是从内蒙古来的。
  - a 好像
- b 看来
- c像
- 7 偏远地区经济不发达的一个重要 是缺少优质教育资源。
  - a 原因
- b 因为 c 由于
- 8 没想到这个商店不 信用卡。
  - a 接受 b 接
- c 受到

## A Read about the film and answer the questions.



## 故事简介:

水泉小学只有一个老师, 就是高老 师。高老师的妈妈病了, 所以他要回家一 个月。村长找到一个名叫魏敏芝的女孩给 高老师代课。魏敏芝只有十三岁,没有教 过书。可是村长找不到别的代课老师。

水泉小学现在只有二十八个学生。高 老师告诉魏敏芝,不会教书没关系,但是 他回来的时候, 学生一个都不能少。

有一个学生叫张慧科, 因为家里没有 钱,决定不上学了,去城里打工。小魏老 师决定去城里把张慧科找回来。她一个人 进城,遇到了很多麻烦,吃了很多苦。最 后,在电视台的帮助下,她终于找到了张 慧科,并给学校带回来很多粉笔和文具。

- 1 看完这部电影要多长时间?
- 2 这部电影的导演是谁?
- 3 水泉小学条件怎么样? 你怎么知道的?
- 4 魏敏芝会不会给学生上课?
- 5 张慧科为什么不上学了?
- 6 魏敏芝最后是怎么找到张慧科的?

Now work in pairs. Work out the meaning of the words.

代课 找回来 讲城 吃苦 在……帮助下 遇到

## Write a passage about the place you live. Include:

- · what you like and don't like about it;
- · a comparison between your ideal place and where you live.

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

本地人	běndìrén	n.	local	精神	jīngshén	n.	
毕竟	bìjìng	adv.	after all	科技	kējì	n.	
必需品	bìxū pĭn	n.	necessity	课间	kèjiān	n.	break (between classes)
并不	bìng bù		-	空虚	kõngxū	adj.	empty, void
操场	cāochǎng	n.	playground			5000000	underdeveloped,
嘈杂	cáozá	adj.	noisy	落后	luòhòu	adj.	backward
常常	chángcháng	adv.	often, frequently	美术	měishù	n.	arts
充实	chōngshí	adj.	full, substantial	偏远地区	piānyuăn dìqū		remote area
从小	cóngxiǎo	adv.	since childhood		qīngsōng	adj.	light, relaxed
的确	díquè	adv.		缺少	quēshǎo	v.	
发达	fādá	adj.	developed	认真	rènzhēn	adj.	earnest
粉笔	fěnbĭ	n.	chalk	设施	shèshī	n.	facilities
高楼大厦	gāolóu dàshà		high-rises, skyscrapers	生活方式	shēnghuó fāngshì		
	gōngzī	n.	salary	守纪律	shǒu jìlù		disciplined
孩子	háizi	n.	child	熟	shú	adj.	familiar, acquainted
	hēibăn	n.	blackboard	体育	tĭyù	n.	physical
互联网	hùliánwăng	n.	Internet	., .,			education
	huánjìng	n.	environment		yālì	n.	pressure
活泼	huópō	adj.		依靠	yīkào	V.	rely on
	jìde	v.	remember	语文	yǔwén	n.	language, language arts
价值	jiàzhí	n.	value		yuányīn	n.	reason
教学	jiàoxué	n.	teaching and learning	愿意	yuànyì	v.	
教育	jiàoyù	n.			zhăngdà	V.	grow up
街道	jiēdào	n.			zhòngshì	v.	attach importance to
	jiēshòu	v.	accept, take	走访	zŏufăng	v.	pay a visit to
	jĭnzhāng	adj.	intense		zūnzhòng	<i>v</i> .	respect

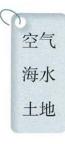


# Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Look at the words and discuss how human activities are affecting these parts of the natural world.







Work in pairs and talk about the picture.
Use the words in the box.

 过去
 现在
 茂盛

 阻止
 森林
 过度开发



- 2-7
- Steve is interviewing Mr Li, the chief engineer of an ecological project in the Kerqin Desert. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 这是一个什么项目?
  - 2 项目的任务和目的是什么?
  - 3 项目的意义是什么?



史蒂夫: 总工程师, 您好。能不能先告诉我, 你的名字怎么写?

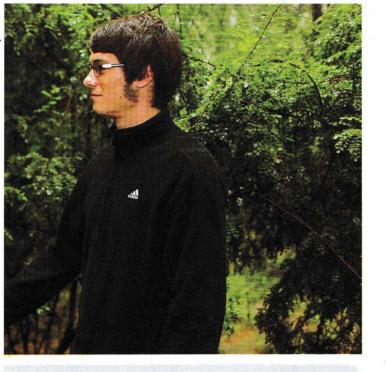
李明: 我叫李明, 木子李, 明天的明。

史蒂夫:谢谢您。李总,我听说,你们这个生态工程项目的主要任务是在 科尔沁沙地种树。我想问问,为 什么要人为改变自然环境呢?

李明: 我们不是要人为改变自然,而是要把它还原到本来的样子。 科尔沁地区原来并不是沙地, 在1970年以前,这个地区还是 森林、草原和绿地。

史蒂夫: 原来是这样! 那科尔沁的沙地是怎么形成的呢?

李明: 气候和环境的自然变化是原因之一,但是最主要的原因是过度开发和过度放牧。这附近有一个大青沟自然保护区,虽然周围都是沙地,但是那里的植物生长得很茂盛,有些树已经



长了80年了。所以科尔沁原来也应该不是沙地。

史蒂夫: 我明白了。那么请您谈一 下你们这个工程项目的意

义, 好吗?

李明: 首先,土地变沙地意味着人 类可以使用的土地越来越 少,所以我们必须阻止沙地继 续扩大;其次,科尔沁地区经 常刮风,如果出现沙尘暴,会 影响到辽宁,甚至几百公里以 外的北京和天津。所以我们 做好这个项目非常有意义。

史蒂夫: 真了不起! 项目做起来很不容易吧?

李明: 是不容易。这样吧, 我带你

去我们种树的地方看一看吧, 你还可以跟我的同事们

聊聊。

史蒂夫: 那太好了!

### 生词 New words

zŏnggōngchéngshī	chief	kāifā 正 <i>生</i>	dovolon
总工程师	engineer	开发	develop
shēngtài		fàngmù	
生态	ecology	放牧	graże
gōngchéng		Dàqīnggōu	
工程	engineering	大青沟	Daqinggou
xiàngmù		màoshèng	O-votalitas
项目	programme, project	茂盛	flourishing (of plants)
rènwu	project	tŭdì	(or plants)
任务	task	土地	land, soil
Kē'ěrqìn		yìwèizhe	
科尔沁	Horqin	意味着	mean, signify
shādì		rénlèi	
沙地	desert	人类	human being
zhòng shù		zŭzhĭ	
种树	plant trees	阻止	stop, prevent
rénwéi		kuòdà	prevent
人为	artificial,	扩大	expand
găibiàn	man-made	qícì	
改变	change	其次	secondly
huányuán		guā fēng	
还原	return to the original state	刮风	blow (wind)
yuánlái	Original state	shāchénbào	
原来	original	沙尘暴	sandstorm
xíngchéng		liǎobuqǐ	
形成	form	了不起	great, amazing
qìhòu		tóngshì	amazing
气候	climate	同事	colleague
guòdù		New York	
过度	excessive,		
	over		

Use the conversation and new words to work out the meaning of the compound words.

1	生态工程	
2	过度开发	
3	主要任务	
4	环境保护	
5	白妖变化	

Now work in pairs. Check your answers.

#### Check the true statements.

- □ 1 李明的项目是一个生态工程项目。
- □ 2 科尔沁地区一直就是沙地。
- □ 3 气候和环境的变化是科尔沁沙地形成的 最主要原因。
- □ 4 这个项目的意义之一是减少辽宁、北京和天津的沙尘暴。
- □ 5 李明要带史蒂夫见他的同事。

### Complete the passage.

今天, 史蒂	夫采访了科尔	√7沁地区-	个	
项目的总_	李明。	李明告诉	史蒂夫,	科尔
沁地区在197	0年以前还不	是	_,但是I	由于
气候和环境	的,:	还有这个	地区的_	
和,	这里后来慢	慢变成了	沙地。李	明和
他的	_做好这个项	目很有_	,	因为
这可以	沙地继续	,	还可以	降低
对周	周围地区的_	o		

You are going to hear some people talking about how they protect the environment. Look at the table and predict what they will say.

	姓	年龄	如何保护环境
	王	31	除了周末,基本上不
	史		只买
		50	去买东西,带自己的
100	郑		家里买的电器是用电 的
The state of the s			很少,也不常 
一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一	孔	(South Market	打印或复印的时候,两面纸都用到

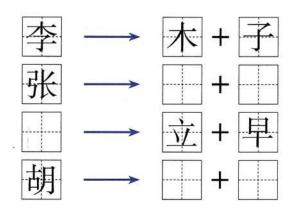
Now listen and and complete the table.

8 Work in pairs. Listen again and check your answers.

## Pronunciation and speaking



- Listen to the sentences and break down the Chinese characters into different parts.
  - 1 我叫李明,木子李,明天的明。
  - 2 我叫张笑, 弓长张, 玩笑的笑。
  - 3 我叫章美意。立早章,美丽的美,意思的意。
  - 4 我叫胡中林,古月胡,中国的中,森林的林。



Now work in pairs. Talk about how you can introduce your Chinese name.

Work in groups of three. Act out a conversation between a TV talk show host and two visitors in China. Talk about how people in other countries protect the environment in their daily lives.

# 2-10

### CHINESE TO GO

Exclamations

Yuánlái shì zhèyàng 原来 是 这样!

I never knew that!

Wŏ míngbai le

ISPP

我 明白 了。 Zhēn liǎo buai

真 了不起!

That's amazing!

## Reading and writing

Work in pairs and look at the picture. Ask and answer questions about sandstorms. Use the words in the box.



沙源 空气 刮风 严重 破坏力

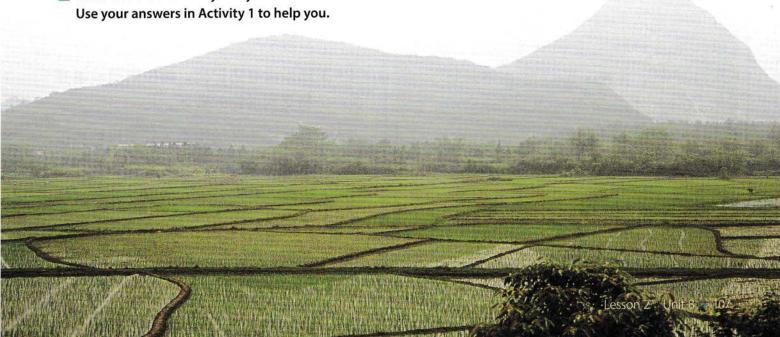
- 1 沙尘暴是怎么形成的?
- 2 沙尘暴对人们的生活有什么影响?
- 3 有什么方法能够减少沙尘暴?
- Write a short dictionary entry on sandstorms.

Look at the words on the left and complete the sentences.

现代化 沙化 绿化	The meaning of
植被= 植物+被子	The meaning of 植被 is
防护栏 防止	The meaning of 防 is
数量 大量 少量	The meaning of 量 is



- Steve has finished one of his journal articles. Read his article on page 108 and choose the best title for it.
  - A 科尔沁沙地
  - B李明与科尔沁
  - C科尔沁的生态工程项目





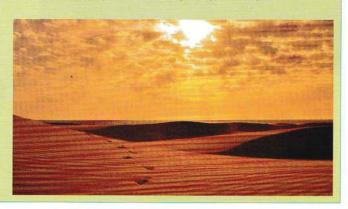


科尔沁沙地是中国四大沙地中最大的一个。每年春天,它都为中国东北、华北地区大范围出现的沙尘暴提供大量沙源,严重影响辽宁中部,甚至京津地区的气候与环境。为了了解科尔沁沙地的治理情况,记者采访了通辽地区一个生态工程项目的负责人李明总工程师和他的同事。

李明以附近的大青沟自然保护区 为例,说明科尔沁沙地的形成是人为 造成的。"我们认为最主要的原因是 过度开发和过度放牧,"李明说,绿 地和森林逐渐减少,为沙地的形成提 供了条件。

李明负责的项目主要目的是恢复 科尔沁地区的植被。每年他们都在科 尔沁地区种植大量的树木。他们还树 立防护栏,首先,可以防止沙地扩大; 其次,还可以起到防止动物破坏新生 植被的作用。

这样的生态工程项目在科尔沁地 区有很多,有些已经开始对改善环境 起作用。根据中国国家林业局的最新 数据,科尔沁沙地每年土地绿化面积 超过沙化面积约75万亩。沙化问题 在中国很多地区已经逐渐得到控制, 沙尘暴出现的次数和破坏力也在减 少。以北京为例,很多人明显地感觉 到最近几年的沙尘暴减少了。



#### Check the true statements.

- □ 1 科尔沁沙地是中国四大沙地之一。
- □ 2 中国南方地区出现的沙尘暴也是来 自科尔沁。
- □ 3 如果没有防护栏,新生的植被很容易受到动物的破坏。
- □ 4 科尔沁地区的生态工程项目虽然很 多,可是都还没有起作用。
- □ 5 去年,科尔沁地区的绿化面积超过 了沙化面积。
- □ 6 最近几年,北京的沙尘暴更严重了。

#### 生词 New words

Dōngběi		huīfù		qĭ zuòyòng	
东北	northeast	恢复	recover	起作用	take effect
wèi ··· tígōng		zhíbèi		línyè jú	
为提供	provide with	植被	vegetation	林业局	bureau of forestry
dàliàng		zhòngzhí		shùjù	
大量	a large amount	种植	plant	数据	data .
yuán		shùlì		miànjī	
源	source	树立	erect	面积	area
yánzhòng		fánghùlán		kòngzhì	
严重	severe	防护栏	fence	控制	control
Jīng-Jīn		dédào		cìshù	
京津	Beijing and Tianjin	得到	get	次数	number of times
zhìlĭ	L I I	fángzhĭ		pòhuàilì	
治理	harness, bring under control	防止	prevent	破坏力	destructive power
qíngkuàng	CONTROL	pòhuài		jiǎnshǎo	
情况	situation	破坏	. destroy	减少	reduce
fùzérén		xīnshēng		míngxiăn	
负责人	director, person in charge	新生	newly born, newly grown	明显	obvious
yǐ wéi lì	charge	zuòyòng			
以为例	take for example	作用	effect, function		
zhújiàn		găishàn			
逐渐	gradually	改善	improve		

#### Complete the passage with the correct words.

形成

严重

过度

条件

以为例	破坏力
影响到	为提供
沙尘暴的	是少要有两个,
一是大风天气,	二是有大量的沙源。
中国的西	北地区, 每
年的四到五月常刮	大风。西北地区大部
分地表环境为沙地	和草原。沙地多,就
沙尘暴的	形成 了条件。
而 开发草	原, 破坏当地的植被,
只会让沙尘暴越来	越。
极强的沙尘暴	了北京和天津地
区,有时甚至远至日	日本。

- Look at the sentences from the journal entry. Decide if each is a general statement (g) or a specific example (s).
  - □ 1 李明负责的项目主要目的是恢复科 尔沁地区的植被。每年他们都在科 尔沁地区种植大量的树木。
  - □ 2 这样的生态工程项目在科尔沁地区 有很多,有些已经开始对改善环境 起作用。
  - □ 3 沙化问题在中国很多地区已经逐渐 得到控制,沙尘暴出现的次数和破 坏力也在减少。
  - □ 4 以北京为例,很多人明显地感觉到 最近几年的沙尘暴减少了。
- Write a general statement about an environmental problem.

Now write sentences with two specific examples.

Write a journal entry about the environmental problem. Use the sentences you wrote in Activity 8 to help you.

# Language in use

Expressing sequences using 首先······其次····· (最后······)

#### Look at the sentences.

- 1 我喜欢大城市的生活。首先,大城市 工作机会多;其次,大城市设施很发 达,生活很方便。
- 2 参加这次比赛的有来自世界各国的选 手。首先出场的是日本选手,其次是 来自澳大利亚的选手……最后出场的 是中国选手。
- 3 要做家常豆腐,首先,你得买老豆腐; 其次,你得准备各种佐料和调料。
- 4 说到西安的景点,我首先想到的是兵马俑,其次是大雁塔。
- 5 我建议你大学毕业以后先工作两年。 首先,这可以让你赚点钱;其次,这 也给了你机会去发现你到底喜欢什么 样的生活。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 首先······其次······ is used to express a sequence of actions or reasoning.
- □ 2 最后 always concludes the sequence.
- □ 3 首先······其次······ is more formal than 第一······第二······.
- ☑ Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions with at least two reasons using 首先······其次·····.
  - 1 你毕业以后想做什么? 为什么?
  - 2 为什么森林对人类很重要?
  - 你为什么要学习中文?
  - 4 你觉得网络和电脑对我们的生活重要吗? 为什么?

Making suggestions using

(要不)这样吧

#### Look at the sentences.

Context	(要不)这样吧 Suggestive clause
	B: 这样吧, 我们这次去大 青沟, 下次去桂林。
A: 图书馆 什么时候关 门? 我要还 一本书。	B: 要不这样吧, 我正好也要去图书馆, 可以帮你把书还了。
A: 这顿饭还是 我请你吃吧。	B: 这样吧, 我请你吃饭, 你请我喝咖啡、看电影。
A: 我们的作业 到底是星期一 还是星期二交?	B: 我也不能肯定。要不这样吧,我们去问问老师。
A: 你说, 他到底 喜欢不喜欢我?	B: 要不这样吧, 我帮你去 问问他。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 (要不)这样吧 is used to bring up a suggestion.
- 2 The structure is usually used in a conversation.
- 3 The structure can be used without context.
- ② Give suggestions to these people using (要不) 这样吧.
  - 1 我不知道暑假应该工作还是继续上中文课。 2 今天晚上我们吃四川菜还是上海菜呢?
  - 3 我喜欢纽约,可是我也很想在伦敦生活。 你说我该上纽约大学还是伦敦大学?
  - \*怎么办?下个星期一就要考试了,我还 没开始复习!

Giving examples using

### 以……为例

#### Look at the sentences.

General statement	以 为例	Case in point
北京地区沙尘	四人伝	三次沙尘暴都
暴一般出现在	以今年	是出现在三月
春天。	为例,	和四月。
改字中人地运	11121144	曼哈顿的房租比
离市中心越近,	以纽约	周围地区高50%
房价越贵。	为例,	到两倍。 .
中国的高铁	以北京	以前坐普通的火车
(高速火车)真	到上海	要15个小时,坐高
的非常方便。	为例,	铁只要5个小时。
学习一个国家		选修了中国历史
的历史对了解	以我自	课以后,我了解
这个国家的文	己为例,	到了孔子的思想
化有很大帮助。		对中国人的影响。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 以······为例 is used to introduce a specific example of the topic.
- □ 2 以······为例 is usually used in informal contexts.
- □ 3 以······为例 means "take ... for example".

## 2 Work in pairs. Continue the arguments using 💹

- 大学选择的专业跟毕业以后的工作没有 很大的关系……
- 旅游业的发展有时候会造成环境的破坏……
- 9 吃太多糖,对身体没有好处……
  - 飞机的延误常常是由于天气的原因……

Expressing "provide" using

为……提供

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject	为	Object (indirect)	提供	Object (direct)
学校	为	孩子	提供	衣食住行。
公司	为	我们	提供	医疗保险。
这个	为	偏远地区 的孩子	提供	受教育的
项目	N	的孩子	了	机会。
旅游	为	你	提供	订票
公司		100	ル六	服务。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 为······提供 means "provide ... for ..."
- □ 2 What appears before 为 is the recipient whom the action is intended for.
- □ 3 As a prepositional phrase, 为 always appears before the main verb 提供.

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 The government should provide basic housing for poor people.
- 2 Starting from next semester, the library will be able to provide us with a lot of books on Chinese history and language.
- 3 For your greater convenience, we now provide you with the choice of online shopping.
- In order to protect your privacy, the hospital will not provide your medical records to anyone without your approval.
- I am sorry, but the school does not provide lunch for your child. Your child has to bring her own lunch.
- Turn to page 191 for grammar reference.



# Communication activity

- Work in pairs. Choose a particular environmental problem in your region and prepare a presentation on it. Include:
  - · the main causes of the problem;
  - similar situations in other parts of the world, and any successful solutions;
  - your suggestions on how to solve the problem.
- Que your presentation to the class.
  Now vote for the best presentation.



Turn to pages 175 and 181 for more speaking practice.

Work in pairs. Look at the structure of the prepositional phrase in the example sentence.

这个工程项目对城市的发展很重要。

对……很重要: 练习发音对学好中文很重要。

Now work out a similar structure in each of the following sentences. Make new sentences with these structures.

- 1 这个大公司为当地人提供了很多工作机会。
- 2 这本书对阿曼达的影响很大。
- 3 夏天减少使用空调对环境保护有很大的意义。
- 4 咖啡对我不起作用。喝了三大杯我还是觉得困。
- 5 中国的发展吸引了越来越多的外国人。以 2006年为例,出入中国的外国人比2001年增加 了几乎100%。
- 6 你可以根据自己的情况选择旅游的方式。

## **Cultural** corner

# Time and space in Chinese culture

In China, the perception of basic concepts such as time and space is subtly different to that in the West. When Westerners first come to China, many are surprised by how many people there are. There are people standing in the crowded waiting room at the railway station, filling all the seats on the train, or squeezed into corridors. In college dormitories, there are six to eight students sleeping in a space considered suitable for one or two Western students. And just taking the bus in the rush hour allows more contact with the Chinese than anything

you might have been prepared for! Even noisy ringtones and loud phone conversations suggest that respect for private space is different.

In its attitude towards time, China has retained some of its traditional aspects, despite its fast-developing economy and modern ways. In the West there's a saying "Time is money." By contrast the Chinese take time to build up their relationships with business partners, and place greater value on trust and friendship than on swift financial returns.

#### Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 我不知道这个地方 \_\_\_\_ 是什么 样子。
  - a 还原 b 原来 c 原因

- 2 沙地的形成,是人为\_\_\_\_\_自然 环境的结果。
  - a 改变
- b 变化
- c变成
- 3 没有工作,就 着没有饭吃。
  - a 意义
- b 意味 c 意思
- 4 我觉得你的话对他 \_\_\_\_ 了很大 的作用。
  - a 受到
- b 得到 c 起到
- 5 种树的目的是\_\_\_\_沙地变成绿地。
  - a II
- b 把
- c Xt
- 6 使用空调对身体健康没有 好处。
  - a 过度
- b 逐渐 c 严重
- 7 暴风雪严重 了京津地区的 交通。
  - a 控制
- b影响
- c 造成

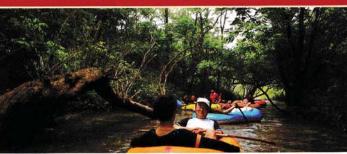
#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 Please briefly illustrate the goal and task of this environment project.
- 2 Possums (负鼠) have destroyed large areas of plantations in New Zealand. But the problem has been brought under control over the past ten years.
- 3 According to data from the Bureau of Forestry, the forest in this area has been reduced by 20% since the 1980s.
- 4 I love the place I live in now. The neighbourhood is very safe and there are a lot of trees in the surrounding area.

#### Read the passage and work out the meaning of the words.

# 大青沟自然保护区





大青沟自然保护区位于内蒙古通辽西边 100公里,这里的自然环境非常特别,大青沟 外就是沙地, 而大青沟内有森林、草原、沙 漠、湖泊,还有河流,植被丰富、风景优美。

由于知道的人还不多, 大青沟不像国 内很多著名景点那么热闹和嘈杂。

来大青沟看看吧,春、夏、秋、 冬——不同的季节有不同的美!

旅游项目 开放时间	垂钓、漂流、草原骑马 全年,5-10月最美。	
交 通	车站坐车,车费20元左右。 约2小时。	车程
门票价格	30元。	

1国家级	2位于
3旅游项目	4全年
5 车程	

#### Now answer the questions.

- 1 去大青沟什么时间最好?
- 2 在大青沟除了能看到优美的自然环境,还可 以做什么?
- 3 从通辽怎么去大青沟?
- 4 大青沟自然保护区的门票是多少钱?
- 5 为什么大青沟不像很多旅游景点那么热闹?
- Write a short paragraph introducing a popular tourist spot that is famous for its natural beauty.

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

次数	cìshù	n.	number of times
大量	dàliàng	adj.	a large amount
得到	dédào	v.	get
东北	Dōngběi	n.	northeast
防护栏	fánghùlán	n.	fence
防止	fángzhĭ	v.	
放牧	fàngmù	V.	graze
人	fùzérén	n.	director, person in charge
改变	găibiàn	v.	change
改善	gǎishàn	v.	improve
工程	gōngchéng	n.	engineering
	guā fēng		blow (wind)
过度	guòdù	adj.	excessive, over
还原	huányuán	v.	return to the original state
恢复	huīfù	v.	recover
减少	jiănshăo	V.	reduce
开发	kāifā	V.	Ye
控制	kòngzhì	V.	control
19-71	kuòdà	v.	expand
了不起	liǎobuqǐ	adj.	great, amazing
林业局	línyè jú		bureau of forestry
茂盛	màoshèng	adj.	flourishing (of plants)
面积	miànjī	n.	area
明显	míngxiǎn	adj.	4 <u></u>
破坏	pòhuài	v.	destroy
破坏力	pòhuàilì	n.	destructive power
	qícì	pron.	secondly
起作用	qĭ zuòyòng		take effect
(1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1)	qìhòu	n.	climate
情况	qíngkuàng	n.	

人类	rénlèi	n.	human being
人为	rénwéi	adj.	artificial, man-made
	rènwu	n.	task
沙尘暴	shāchénbào	n.	sandstorm
沙地	shādì		desert
生态	shēngtài	n.	ecology
树立	shùlì	v.	erect
数据	shùjù	n.	data
同事	tóngshì	n.	
土地	tŭdì	n.	land, soil
为提供	wèitígōng		providewith
项目	xiàngmù	n.	
新生	xīnshēng	adj.	newly born, newly grown
形成	xíngchéng	v.	form
	yánzhòng	adj.	severe
以为例	yĭwéilì		take for example
意味着	yìwèizhe		mean, signify
源	yuán	n.	source
2 <u></u>	yuánlái	n.	original
植被	zhíbèi	n.	vegetation
治理	zhìlĭ	v.	harness, bring under control
种树	zhòng shù		plant trees
种植	zhòngzhí	V.	plant
	zhújiàn	adv.	gradually
总工程师	zŏnggōngchéngshī		chief engineer
阻止	zŭzhĭ	v.	stop, prevent
	zuòyòng	n.	effect, function
大青沟	Dàqīnggōu	n.	Daqinggou
京津	Jīng-Jīn		Beijing and Tianjin
科尔沁	Kē'ěrqìn	n.	Horqin

### Review 2

# Vocabulary

### Match the words to make phrases.

1 取	a 衣服
2 起	b 行李
3 扫	<b>c</b> 树
4 旺	d 钱
5 赚	<b>e</b> 人
6 种	f 作用
7 接	g 地
8 守	h 纪律

### Circle the odd words out.

11区71

4 糸 江	<b>工</b>	个月个甲	洛川
2 拨打	设施	打扫	乘坐
3 项目	恢复	控制	开发
4 毕竟	害羞	的确	逐渐
5 气候	环境	严重	生态

本主之中

城口

### Put the words in the most appropriate categories.

- a 暴风雪 b 转机 c 风力 d 航班 e 航空公司 「校长 g 登机牌 h 体育 i 降雪 j 黑板 k 操场 1 刮风
- m课间 n粉笔 o托运 p订票

气象预报	乘坐飞机	学校教育

### Complete the sentences with the correct words.

1 这次考试的	是从第一课到第
四课。	

- a 周围 b 范围
- 2 父母应该 孩子的隐私。
  - a 尊重 b 严重
- 3 学校逐渐 \_\_\_\_\_, 学生也越来越多。
  - a 长大 b 扩大
- 4 这个城市的外地人特别多, 了 一种特别的文化。
  - a 形成 b 造成
- 5 我不能再吃了,再吃很快就要\_\_\_\_\_\_了。
  - a 超重 b 超过
- 6 进入本校图书馆必须 学生证。
  - a 出示 b 出现
- 7 纽约市中心的房租太贵了,真 \_\_\_\_\_!
- a 了不起 b 受不了

## Grammar

Complete the sentences with the correct words.	3 除了这本书,我还想借两本
1 她从小对电脑和外语感兴趣,我想她大	于美国内战的历史书。
学的专业跟电脑有关,	4 很久, 他在这里工作过。
跟语言有关。	
a 不是就是	5 我希望房租在1000元,要不
<b>b</b> 不是而是	就太贵了!
2你没有去,昨天晚上的演出非	6 要看懂中文报纸,你得认识1500个
常棒!	的汉字才行。
a 幸好 b 可惜	
3 公司将 大家提供免费的住宿。	Complete the conversations with the words give
	1 A: 土地的过度开发会有什么后果?
<b>a</b> 以 <b>b</b> 为	B:(造成)
4 你错了,英国历史上发生这样	2 A: 对不起, 今天晚上所有飞往北京的
的事。	航班都取消了。
a 并不 b 并没有	B:(看来)
5 中国南部的天气没有 这次暴风	
雪的影响。	3 A: 请谈谈环境保护的重要性。
a 受到 b 得到	B:(以为例)
	4 A: 学习中国历史有什么好处?
Complete the sentences with the words in the box.	D. C.L.
以前 以后 以上 以下 以外 以内	B:(让)
	5 A: 你知道郑和是少数民族吗?
1 毕业,我们将在世界各地工作。	B:(好像)
2 一个小时我一定回来。	

Make a comparison between A and B in each pair and write down three sentences using different expressions from the lists.

A	В
大学生活	高中生活
自己住	跟朋友一起住
中文	英文
男人	女人

Explicit comparison
跟 B (相)比, A
A比B多了
A比B一点/一些
A没有B那么
A跟B有/没有差别

# Implicit comparison

更

比较

# Integrated skills

- 0 2-12
- Listen to a conversation between two passengers on a plane and answer the questions.
  - 1 在飞机上,女孩子为什么要跟男孩子 换座位?
  - 2 两个人都是什么地方人?
  - 3 女孩子喜欢她住的城市吗? 为什么?
  - 4 男孩子为什么觉得女孩子的城市好?

Now listen again and complete the sentences.

- 5 女孩子本来坐在 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 的座位。她想 跟男孩子换 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 的座位。
- 6 女孩子不习惯吃\_\_\_\_\_, 所以肚子不舒服。

- 7 男孩子去香港是为了\_\_\_\_。
- 8 女孩子来成都是 \_\_\_\_。
- 10 男孩子打算 \_\_\_\_\_ 回成都。他请女孩子给他推荐 。
- Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and talk about their differences. Include:
  - · the teacher;
  - · the engagement of the students;
  - · the facilities;
  - · the atmosphere of the whole class.





El Complete the passage with the words in the box.

收入发现并结婚可惜感兴趣算隐私而是重视聊天奇怪

很多刚到中国的外国人 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 中国人喜欢问对方个人 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ 的问题,比方说年龄、 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 和婚姻状况。 其实,这 \_\_\_\_\_ 不是说中国人不 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 个人隐私, \_\_\_\_\_\_ 说在传统的中国人看来这些不 \_\_\_\_\_ 是隐私。 问你多大, 工资多少, 有没有 \_\_\_\_\_\_ , 说明他/她对你 \_\_\_\_\_ , 显得热情, \_\_\_\_\_\_ 的时候还可以多一些话题。 要是你问他们同样的问题, 他们也会告诉你答案。 \_\_\_\_\_ 很多人不明白这种文化上的差异, 会感到非常 \_\_\_\_\_。

- Write a diary entry of 200 words describing one special day. Include:
  - the weather;
  - things you did;
  - people you met;
  - · things that happened which meant something to you.

## **Enjoy Chinese**



雪: snow

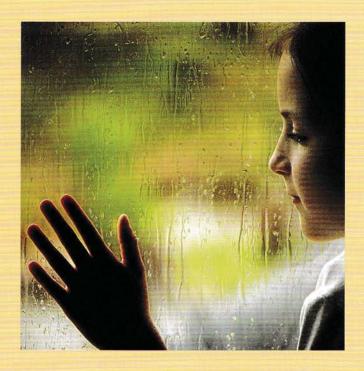
雷: storm

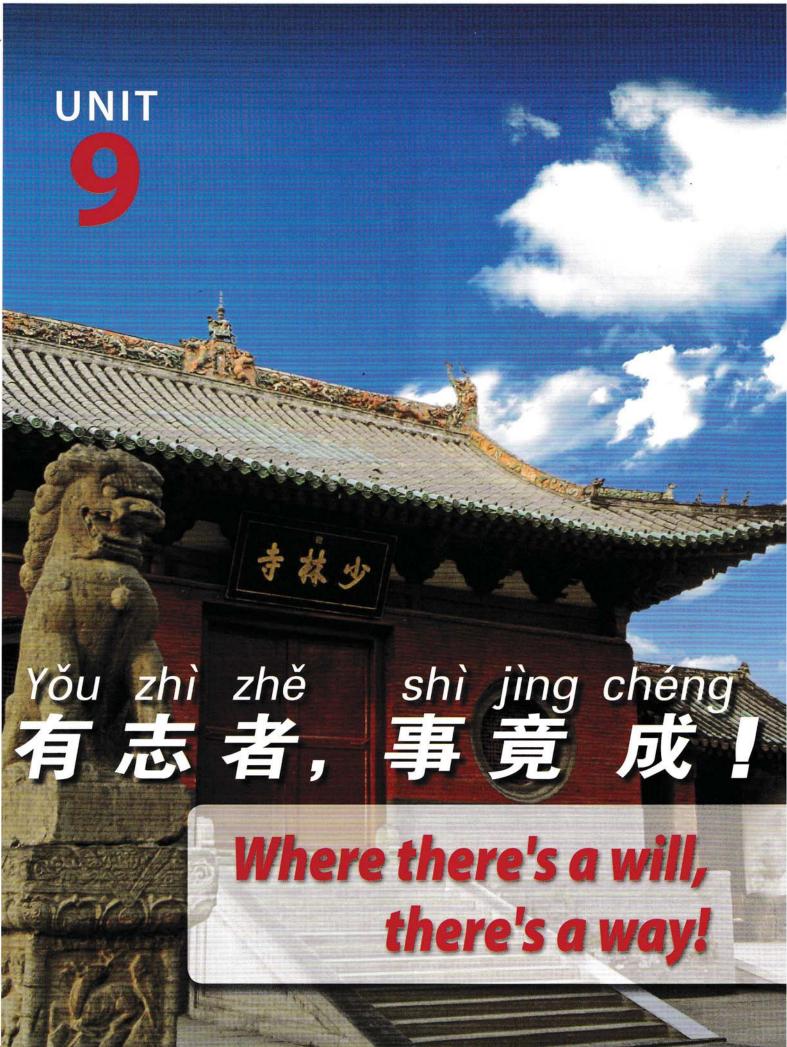
霜: frost

雾: fog

The radical n has always meant rain. It looks like raindrops falling from the sky.

Can you explain why the traditional characters for cloud ( $\equiv$ ) and electricity ( $\rightleftharpoons$ ) are  $\equiv$  and  $\equiv$ ?





# Vocabulary and listening

**11** Work in pairs. Look at the words with 力. Find out their meanings.



Work in pairs. Write down the words you know about kung fu.



- Steve has finished his trip to Inner Mongolia and is now visiting the Shaolin Temple. Listen to his conversation with his local friend, Wang Bo, and answer the questions.
  - 1 少林功夫的历史有多长?
  - 2 少林僧人练功是为了什么?
  - 3"有志者,事竟成"是什么意思?

史蒂夫: 王波, 少林寺好大啊!

王波: 是啊,全寺面积超过三万平方 米。你看看这张地图,我们还 有很多景点没去呢。

史蒂夫: 快看, 那边是不是有僧人在练功? 我早就想来看看世界闻名的少林功夫了! 我还想学几招呢!

王波: 没错,是武僧们在练武。少林功夫已经有一千五百多年的历史了。

史蒂夫: 他们练功是为了武术表演吗? 听说少林寺的武僧常常出国演出。

王波: 少林寺的武僧去过六十多个国家和地区演出,可他们练功不是为



了表演, 而是为了修炼。练功是他们修炼的一部分。

王波: 哈哈,可不光是动作帅啊, 他们有真功夫,有的能跳 过高墙,有的力气很大,可 以举起比自己重很多的东 西,还有的能躺在刀尖上而 不受伤。

史蒂夫: 他们真厉害! 可他们是怎

么练的呢?

王波: 这个吗, 一两句话说不

清楚。就拿最基本的马步来说,先要练好普通的马步,然后可以在头顶逐渐增加重物,锻炼耐力。两三年以后,手臂和腿部的肌肉就会很有力。

史蒂夫: 光是马步就要练两三年?

这得有多么大的毅力啊!

王波: 中国有句老话: 有志者,

事竟成。

史蒂夫: 嗯, 我知道这句话。有决

心、有毅力的人,一定能

成功。

### 生词 New words

Shàolín Sì		jŭ		duànliàn	
少林寺	Shaolin Temple	举	lift, raise	锻炼	build up
dìtú		tăng		nàilì	
地图	map	躺	lie	耐力	stamina, endurance
sēngrén		dāojiān		shǒubì	
僧人	monk	刀尖	knife/sword point	手臂	arm
liàngōng		shòushāng		tuĭ	
练功	practise kung fu	受伤	get hurt	腿	leg
wénming		lìhai		jīròu	
闻名	famous, renowned	厉害	powerful	肌肉	muscle
zhāo		jù		duōme	
招	move	句	sentence	多么	how, what
xiūliàn		ná ··· láishuō		yìlì	
修炼	practise austerities	拿来说	take for example	毅力	perseverance
ng		măbù		lăohuà	
嗯	(expressing agreement)	马步	horse-riding stance	老话	old saying
dòngzuò		tóudĭng		yǒu zhì zhě	
动作	movement	头顶	top of the head	有志者,	where there's a will
guāng		zēngjiā		shì jìng chéng	where there's a will, there's a way
光	merely, only	增加	increase	事竟 成	there sa way
lìqi		zhòngwù		juéxīn	
力气	strength	重物	heavy thing	决心	determination

	2709 STATES			
4	Chacktha		ctatamant	-
14	Check the	correct	statement	٥.

- □ 1 史蒂夫和王波很快就能参观完少林寺。
- □ 2 少林寺的功夫世界闻名。
- □ 3 少林寺的僧人练武只是为了出国表演。
- □ 4 少林寺的功夫不只是动作漂亮。
- □ 5 练好马步很容易。
- Work in pairs. Work out the meanings of the compound words.

武僧	世界闻名	武术表演
两三年	逐渐增加	练武

6 Complete the passage with the words in the box.

腿部	锻炼	其次	早就	意义
决心	耐力	成功	首先	
我	_想学打网	球了。因	为网球是	一项很
右	的运动	#	1四种风1	

有 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 的运动。\_\_\_\_\_\_,打网球可以 \_\_\_\_\_ 身体。打网球的人,手臂和\_\_\_\_\_\_ 都很有力。 \_\_\_\_\_\_,打网球还可以锻炼一个人的 \_\_\_\_\_。 第三,我认为打网球还可以增加人的毅力。如 果一个人身体好,又有 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 和毅力,那不管 做什么都会 \_\_\_\_\_。



Some children are talking about why they practise kung fu. Look at the table and predict their reasons.

名字	年龄	练武的原因
金小龙		
王明	8	
李玉		练武很酷
郑一明	12	
	15	为了更有毅力

Now listen and complete the table.



Work in pairs. Listen again and check your answers.

## Pronunciation and speaking



- Read the sentences.
  - 1 少林寺好大啊!
  - 2 他们的动作太帅了!
  - 3 他们真厉害!
  - 4 这得有多么大的毅力啊!

Now listen and check.

Group the following expressions according to their level of formality.

比方说例如比如以······为例拿······来说有这样一个例子

Informal	Formal

Work in pairs. Talk about your favourite kung fu film and explain why you like it.



## Reading and writing

- Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your favourite film.
  - 1 这部电影是什么时候上映的?
  - 2 电影是哪个国家的?
  - 3 有哪些主要演员?
  - 4 影片的故事发生在什么时候?
  - 5 故事的内容是怎样的?
  - 6 影片的音乐怎么样?
  - 7 你为什么喜欢这部电影?
- 2 Work in pairs. Work out the meanings of the words and give examples.

Look at the words on the left and guess the meanings of the compound words on the right.

古 ancient 寺 temple	古寺 _ancient temple
同名 with the same name	同名电影
苦 hard, bitterly	苦练
牧羊人 shepherd	牧羊女 ————



- Read about the film on page 124 and answer the questions.
  - 1 电影是哪一年上映的?
  - 2 电影的故事发生在什么朝代?
  - **3** 电影是谁主演的,他在这部影片里的表演 有什么特别的地方?
  - 4 电影里的歌曲为什么流行了很多年?





# 电影《少林寺》

少林寺位于中国河南省的嵩山,有1500多年的历史。关于这座古寺,有很多美丽的传说,很多电影的灵感就来自于这些传说。在关于少林寺的影片中,最经典的一部就是1982年上映的同名电影。

影片的故事发生在隋朝。一位 武术家的儿子小虎被杀父仇人追 杀,在少林寺获救。小虎在少林寺 出家,苦练武功,并和僧人们一起 帮助李世民打败敌人,也为父亲报 了仇。其中还穿插了小虎与牧羊女 白无瑕的爱情故事。最后,李世民 成为唐朝的皇帝,并重奖帮助过他 的少林寺。影片无论是武打动作还 是故事,都非常精彩。

电影《少林寺》当年在中国的 票房非常好,在全世界再次引起了 功夫电影的热潮。小虎的扮演者李连杰也一举成名。当时许多功夫片使用替身,而李连杰在《少林寺》中用的是真功夫。拍完《少林寺》以后,李连杰移居香港,拍了很多有名的功夫片,例如《黄飞鸿》。后来他还去好莱坞拍了不少动作片。

影片中牧羊女白无瑕唱的一首歌《牧羊曲》,也因为优美的歌词和曲调而流行了很多年。一直到现在,还有很多中国人在卡拉OK厅点唱这首歌。



#### 生词 New words

Hénán		chūjiā		yĭnqĭ	
河南	Henan	出家	become a monk/nun	引起	give rise to
Sōng Shān		kŭliàn		rècháo	
嵩山	Songshan Mountain	苦练	practise hard	热潮	enthusiasm, mass fervour
zuò		dăbài		bànyănzhě	mass ici vour
座	(for immovable objects)	打败	defeat	扮演者	actor, performer
měilì		dírén		Lĭ Liánjié	
美丽	beautiful	敌人	foe, enemy	李连杰	Jet Li
línggăn		bàochóu		xŭduō	
灵感	inspiration	报仇	take revenge	许多	many
yĭngpiàn		chuānchā		tìshēn	
影片	film	穿插	interweave	替身	stunt man/ woman
shàngyìng		mùyángnű		yíjū	Woman
上映	release (a film)	牧羊女	shepherdess	移居	migrate
fāshēng		Bái Wúxiá		yōuměi	h
发生	take place, happen	白无瑕	· Bai Wuxia	优美	beautiful (story, song, etc.)
Suícháo		àiqíng		gēcí	Jong, etc.,
隋朝	Sui Dynasty	爱情	romantic love	歌词	lyrics
shā		wúlùn		qŭdiào	
杀	kill	无论		曲调	melody
chóurén		dōu	no matter what	kălā 0K tīng	
仇人	foe, enemy	都		卡拉OK厅	Karaoke bar
zhuī		jīngcăi∙			
追	chase, run after	精彩	fantastic		
huòjiù		piàofáng			
获救	get saved	票房	box office		

Answer the questions in Activity 1 on page 123 about the film *The Shaolin Temple*.

占加且

无论

6 Complete the passage with the words in the box.

或温

歌曲

7010	W/, 🗎	ניעושיי	мусиц
比方说	来自	受	
卡拉OK	日本,	进入由	国以后特
别	欢迎。	_ 是跟朋	友还是跟
家人一起	显玩,很多人	都选择	去卡拉OK
厅唱歌。	在卡拉OK厂	<b>「的房间</b>	里, 你可
以	自己喜欢的	竹	, 而且记
不住	也没有关	系。有时	候,从一
个人点的	歌可以知道	他/她大树	既的年龄,
,	要是你点唱	《牧羊曲	由》, 你肯
定是20世纪	纪80年代以前	切出生的!	

Find out the relationships between the following people in the film and complete the passage.

小虎	白无瑕
李世民 一	少林寺僧人们
一起苦练武功。 发生了爱	影的主要人物。他和和 在这部电影中,和 情故事。与 _成为唐朝的皇帝。

Think about a film you like. Write sentences about the relationships between people in the film. Use the sentences in Activity 7 to help you.

Now write a short passage about the film. Use the passage and the sentences about relationships to help you.

## Language in use

Expressing potential/capability using potential complements

- Look at the sentences. Pay attention to the underlined parts.
  - 1 他说不清楚这件事情的原因。
  - 2 阿曼达听得懂老师上课说中文。
  - 3 这个问题很难, 我怎么都想不明白。
  - 4 我的手机有问题, 你给我发的短信, 我看不到。
  - 这么多好吃的, 你吃得完吗?
  - 我不太了解这个题目。不知道写得好

# Now complete the explanations with the correct words.

- 1 The potential complement is used to express the \_\_\_\_\_ of the subject to complete some tasks.
  - a result
  - b capacity, potential
  - e reason
- 2 The form of the potential complement is
  - a Verb + 得 + complement
  - b Verb + 不 + complement
  - both a and b (b is the negative form of a)
- 3 The object of the verb in the potential complement can be placed \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a after the complement
  - b before the subject (as a topic)
  - both a and b
- 4 In contrast to (不)能 + verb phrase, the potential complement can refer to the
  - a internal capacity of the subject
  - b external situational conditions that allow an action (or not)
  - e both a and b

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 You speak too fast. I can't follow you.
- 2 I can't read your writing clearly.
- 3 Chinese calligraphy is so difficult! I can't write the characters well!
- 4 Can you finish all your homework in one night?
- 5 I can't sing the song well.

### Expressing 'only/just" using 光······就 or 光······不

#### Look at the sentences.

- 1要学好中文,光听录音是不行的。
- 2 在纽约上大学越来越贵,光是生活费一 年就超过两万美元。
- 3 暴风雪破坏力很大,光是京津地区就有 十几条道路关闭。
- 4 你不能光吃肉不吃菜,这样很不健康。
- 5 找女朋友光看长得是否漂亮是不行的, 你还得看她的性格怎么样。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 光 means "only" or "just", but has to be used either with 不 or 就.
- 2 光 is interchangeable with 只.
- 3 光 can be replaced by 只, but not vice versa.
- 4 光·····就····· is used to illustrate that the size/amount/number is impressive.
- 5 光·····不····· is used to explain that one condition alone does not suffice.

# 2 Complete the sentences with 光······就 or

#### 光……不.

- 1 他的房子非常大, \_\_\_ 卧室 \_\_\_ 有五个!
- 2 这个任务很困难,\_\_\_有决心是\_\_\_行的。
- 3 历史课的功课太多了, \_\_\_\_作文 \_\_\_要 交四篇!
- 4 要了解一个国家的文化, \_\_\_会说他们的语言\_\_\_够。
- 5 中文太难了, \_\_\_ 汉字 \_\_\_ 要学三千个!

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 It is very expensive to travel to Europe in the summer. The ticket alone costs more than \$2000.
- 2 She has so many books! She has 200 Chinese books alone.
- 3 To study a foreign language well, it is not enough just to go to class and do the homework.
- 4 If you want to lose weight (减肥), it won't work if you only exercise a lot you should also watch what you eat.

Expressing "concerning" using

关于

#### Look at the examples.

- 1 关于这个地区的环境问题,现在还没有什么解决办法。
- 2 我们今天的话题是关于中国农村的小学教育。
- 3 关于中国和美国的贸易,我们已经讨论了很多。
- 4 中国唐代有很多关于爱情的诗歌。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 关于 means "about".
- □ 2 关于 is similar in meaning to 跟······有关.
- □ 3 关于 is less formal than 跟······有关.
- Work in pairs. Tell each other a piece of news in three sentences using 关于.

#### Expressing contrast of meaning using

而

#### Look at the sentences.

Clause 1	愐	Clause 2
我父母希望我学医,	而	我自己想学历史。
很多大学要求学生 学习3-5门选修课 才能毕业,	而	这所大学没 有这样的选 修课。
大学毕业后,很多人 选择在大城市工作, 我本来不喜欢看爱 情片,	而而	小王决定去偏 远地区教书。 这部爱情片深 深吸引了我。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 而 means "and, also", similar to 而且 or 并
- 2 m in general means "in contrast" or "instead of".
- □ 3 而 is always placed at the beginning of the second clause.

#### Complete the sentences.

- 1 在大城市工作的人们常常觉得压力 很大,而在中国成都,
- 2 找工作的时候,大家都很关心赚钱 多不多,而马克\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 选择大学的时候,大部分的学生都会想去更有名的学校,而\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 对我的朋友来说, 手机和网络非常重要, 而对我来说, \_\_\_\_\_

Turn to page 193 for grammar reference.

# **Communication activity**

- Work in pairs. Talk about your favourite type of film and name a few classics of the genre.
- 2 Work in groups with similar film interests.
  - Discuss and choose one film you all think of as representative of your genre.

- Prepare a five-minute presentation about it including the following details:
  - Name
  - · Country of production
  - · Year of release
  - · Director/Production company
  - Stars
  - Plot synopsis
  - Box office
  - · Influence of the film
- B Give your presentation to the class.

Now vote for the best presentation.



Turn to pages 176 and 182 for more speaking practice.

..........

## Review and practice

- Complete the sentences with the correct words in brackets.
  - 1 作业明天交, 你 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 了吗? ( 做完/做得完 )
  - **2** 刚才你说什么?我\_\_\_\_\_。 (没听到/听到了)
  - 3 这个故事很简单,连小孩子都\_\_\_\_。 (看得懂/看懂)
  - 4 没有适当的教育背景,你当然\_\_\_\_\_\_ 好工作。(找不到/没找到)
  - 5 这本中文书很常见, 你在普通的书店就 \_\_\_\_\_。(买到/买得到/买不到)
  - 6 电影太长了,我看了三个小时还 \_\_\_\_。(没看完/看不完)
  - 7 你学中文才三个星期,当然 \_\_\_\_\_。 汉字。你得多练习才 \_\_\_\_。 (写得好/写好了/写不好)

## **Cultural** corner

# The Shaolin Temple

The Shaolin Temple, in the Songshan Mountain of Henan, is well known from its appearance in many popular kung fu films. However, the Shaolin Temple's cultural and historical significance goes beyond martial arts, because it is the birthplace of Chan Buddhism (禅宗), better known as "Zen" in the West.

The temple's history dates back to 495 AD, when the Northern Wei Emperor wanted to use it to house the revered Buddhabhadra (佛陀跋陀罗), an Indian monk who came to China to spread Buddhism. In 508 AD Bodhidharma (达

摩) came to the Shaolin Temple and eventually established the Chan Buddhism, which not only flourished in China, but also spread throughout East Asia to become a major branch of Buddhism.

The monastery itself has come under attack many times, having been ransacked for valuables and burnt down by warlords. The temple is an important cultural symbol and a popular tourist destination. More recently, the temple and surrounding pagodas have been granted UNESCO World Heritage status.

#### Complete the sentences with the correct words.

- 1 这部功夫片在中国不是特别受欢迎, 在美国的票房却非常好。
  - a 而目
- b 并 c 而
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_明天是否下雨,我们都会去看 电影。
  - a 不但
- **b** 如果 **c** 无论
- 3 我 知道你的名字了。
  - a 早就
- b 从小 c 一直
- 4 教育的发展对改变当地的环境起到 了\_\_\_\_的作用。
  - a 厉害
- **b** 很大 **c** 有力
- 5 长跑最需要的是 \_\_\_\_。
  - a 重力
- b耐力
- c力气
- 6 他做的这个决定跟他以前的生活
  - a 关系 b 有关 c 关于

#### Read the story of the film Karate Kid (2010) and rewrite it in Chinese.

The story is about an American boy learning a life lesson in the land of kung fu—China. Dre Parker is a 12-year-old from Detroit, who has moved to China recently because of his mother's new job. Dre is not happy about the move, but he soon falls for his classmate Mei Ying. Mei Ying likes him, too. However, cultural differences make their friendship difficult. Mei Ying's parents believe that Dre is a bad influence. Dre's feelings towards Mei Ying also turn the class bully, Cheng, into his enemy. Cheng has been practising kung fu for a long time, and can easily beat Dre, who knows only a little. A maintenance man, Mr Han, who is secretly a kung fu master, comes to Dre's rescue. Mr Han starts to teach Dre kung fu. Dre not only learns kung fu from Mr Han and defeats his enemy, Cheng, but also learnt that kung fu is not about punches and kicking, but courage and perseverance.

Now look at the poster for the film. Write a complete introduction to the film. Add more information if you can.

中文片名:《功夫小子》,《功夫梦》

英文片名: Karate Kid, Kung Fu Kid

演:哈罗德·兹瓦特 Harald Zwart

主 演: 贾登.史密斯

(Jaden Smith) as Dre Parker

成龙

(Jackie Chan) as Mr Han

影片类型:动作片/家庭片

片 长: 140 分钟

国家/地区:美国/中国

对白语言:英语/中文



# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

爱情	àiqíng	n.		票房	piàofáng	n.	box office
扮演者	bànyănzhě	n.	actor, performer	曲调	qŭdiào	n.	
报仇	bàochóu	v.	take revenge	热潮	rècháo	n.	enthusiasm, mass
仇人	chóurén	n.	foe, enemy	僧人	sēngrén	n.	fervour monk
出家	chūjiā	V.	become a monk/ nun	杀	shā	ν.	MOTIK
穿插	chuānchā	v.	interweave	上映	shàngyìng	v.	release (a film)
打败	dăbài	v.	defeat	手臂	shǒubì	n.	arm
刀尖	dāojiān	n.	knife/sword point	, ,	shòushāng	v.	get hurt
敌人	dírén	n.	foe, enemy		tăng	v.	lie
地图	dìtú	n.		替身	tìshēn	n.	stunt man/woman
	dòngzuò	n.	movement '	头顶	tóudĭng	n.	top of the head
锻炼	duànliàn	v.			tuĭ	n.	leg
	duōme	adv.	how, what	闻名	wénmíng	v.	famous, renowned
发生	fāshēng	v.		无论			
歌词	gēcí	n.	lyrics	都	wúlùndōu	conj.	
	guāng	adv.	merely, only	修炼	xiūliàn	v.	practise austerities
获救	huòjiù	v.	get saved	许多	xǔduō	num.	many
肌肉	jīròu	n.	muscle	移居	yíjū	V.	migrate
	jīngcăi	adj.	fantastic	毅力	yìlì	n.	perseverance
举 .	jŭ	v.	lift, raise		yĭnqĭ	v.	give rise to
白	jù	measure word	sentence	影片	yĭngpiàn	n.	film
决心	juéxīn	n.		优美	yōuměi	adj.	beautiful (story, song, etc.)
卡拉OK厅	kălā 0K tīng	n.	Karaoke bar	有志者,	yŏu zhì zhě		3 <b>-</b> 2
苦练	kŭliàn	V.	practise hard	事竟成	shì jìng chéng	9	
老话	lăohuà	n.	old saying	增加	zēngjiā	v.	increase
-	lìhai	adj.	powerful	招	zhāo	measure	move
力气	lìqi	n.		重物	zhòngwù	word	heavy thing
练功	liàngōng	V.	practise kung fu	追	zhuī	v.	chase, run after
灵感	línggăn	n.	inspiration				(for immovable
马步	măbù	n.	horse-riding stance	座	zuò	word	objects)
美丽	měilì	adj.	beautiful	白无瑕	Bái Wúxiá		Bai Wuxia
牧羊女	mùyángnů	n.	shepherdess	河南	Hénán	n.	Henan
拿	ná…láishuō			李连杰	Lĭ Liánjié		Jet Li
来说				少林寺	Shàolín Sì		Shaolin Temple
耐力	nàilì	n.	stamina, endurance	嵩山	Sõng Shān		Sóngshan Mountain
嗯	'ng	interj.	(expressing agreement)	隋朝	Suícháo		Sui Dynasty

UNIT Qiānwàn bùnéng jí 千万不能急。 Don't rush things.

# Vocabulary and listening

Match the verbs with their meanings.

1 扶 a to stand
2 站 b to raise
3 抬 c to kick
4 踢 d to prop up, to support

■ Work in pairs. Look at the words and discuss when the injuries could occur.



脚踝 ankle 扭伤 sprain
腿 leg 骨折 bone fracture
手臂 arm 肌肉拉伤 muscle strain

### 腿的肌肉拉伤

Back in Beijing, Steve injured himself while practising kung fu with Mark. Listen to their conversation with the doctor and answer the questions.

- 1 史蒂夫是怎么受伤的?
- 2 他的伤严重吗?
- 3 史蒂夫多长时间不能多活动?

医生: 受伤了? 扶着桌子,慢慢坐下。 先把受伤的脚抬高,放在这儿, 再把袜子脱了。怎么回事?

史蒂夫: 我刚才练习踢腿, 踢的是左腿, 但右脚没站稳, 结果跌倒了。

马克: 我觉得他好像是伤了脚踝。

医生: 知道了。让我看看。这样疼不疼?

史蒂夫: 不疼。

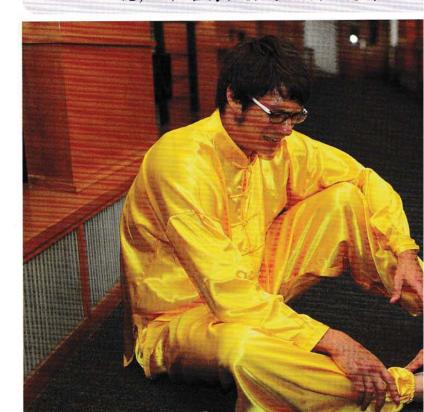
医生: 这样呢?

史蒂夫: 啊……很疼。不会骨折了吧?

医生: 放心吧, 骨头没事, 只是扭伤了脚踝。我给你处理一下。

史蒂夫:谢谢您,大夫。这里经常有人 练功受伤吗?

医生:不太多。按照正确的方法练习,一般是不会受伤的。但是初学者往往用力的方法不对,或者重心不稳,比较容易扭伤或肌肉拉伤。骨



折也不是没有,但比较少。

史蒂夫: 唉, 我刚才就是踢腿的时候太用力了。

马克: 是啊,练功要慢慢来,千万不能急。

史蒂夫: 嗯。对了, 我经常看到武打 片里的人受了伤擦点药很快 就好, 是不是真有那么神奇 的药?

医生: 哈哈, 那是在电影里。有一些治扭伤的药效果的确不错, 但没有那么快起作用。扭伤最重要的是多休息, 少活动。

史蒂夫: 大概要休息多长时间?

医生: 最少四个星期。

史蒂夫: 唉,看来功夫我是练不成了。

马克: 等你的伤好了以后再继续吧。



### 生词 New words

fú		chŭli	
扶	prop up, support	处理	treat, deal with
jiǎo	support	dàifu	
脚	foot	大夫	doctor ·
tái		ànzhào	
抬	raise	按照	in accordance with
wàzi		liànxí	
袜子	socks	练习	practise
tuō		yìbān	
脱	take off	一般	general
zhàn		wångwång	
站	stand	往往	more often than not
wěn		yònglì	put forth one's
稳	steady	用力	strength
diēdǎo		zhòngxīn	
跌倒	fall down	重心	centre of gravity
shāng		lāshāng	
伤	hurt	拉伤	strain
jiǎohuái		ài	
脚踝	ankle	唉	(a sighing sound)
téng		qiānwàn	
疼	ache	千万	be sure to, must
gŭzhé	bone	cā	
骨折	fracture	擦	spread on, apply
fàngxīn		shénqí	
放心	rest assured	神奇	magic
gŭtou	assaica	xiàoguŏ	
骨头	bone	效果	effect
niŭ		huódòng	
扭	sprain	活动	stay active

#### Check the true statements.

- □ 1 史蒂夫没有骨折, 只是扭伤了脚踝。
- □ 2 医生说经常有人练功受伤。
- □ 3 初学者比较容易受伤的原因之一是 重心不稳。
- □ 4 武打片里的那些神奇的药都是真的。
- □ 5 史蒂夫得休息差不多一个月才能继 续练功。

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

# 受伤 疼 伤

- 1 他昨天运动的时候 \_\_\_\_\_ 了。
- 2 我的头很 \_\_\_\_。
- 3 我觉得他可能 \_\_\_\_\_ 了大腿肌肉。
- 4 昨天打球打了两个小时,今天手臂 \_\_\_\_\_死了。
- 5 你这么跟他说话,会\_\_\_\_\_他的心。
- 6 在这次事故(accident)中,一共有三十 人 \_\_\_\_\_。



You are going to hear three conversations between a doctor and a patient. Look at the table and predict what the problems or causes are.

	问题	医生认为可能的原因
1		跑步
2	左脚常扭伤	
3		长时间用电脑

Now listen and complete the table.



Work in pairs. Listen again and check your answers.

# Pronunciation and speaking



- Listen to the sentences.
  - 1慢点儿。
  - 2 快说!
  - 3 别用力!
  - 4 练功千万不能急!
  - 5 多休息,少活动。

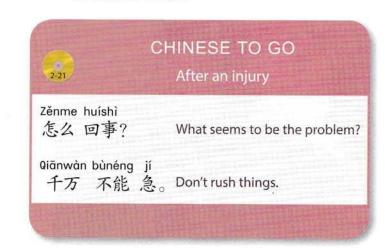
Now work in pairs. Talk about when you are likely to say these sentences.

I would say 慢点儿 when someone seems to be doing something too fast to be safe, like eating in a hurry.

Translate the sentences into Chinese. Use the words in the box.

千万 别 多 少 快 慢

- 1 Walk slowly!
- 2 Don't talk while you eat!
- 3 Call me when you get home, no matter what!
- 4 Come quickly!
- 5 Don't play so many games!
- 6 Drink more water!
- Work in pairs. Talk about your experiences of getting hurt when exercising or doing outdoor activities. Make suggestions using the expressions in Activities 1 and 2.



# Reading and writing

Label the body parts with the given words.



口 大即	□ 人版	□ 除 面
□ 胸部	□小腿	□ 手肘
□ 腰部	□ 脚尖	□ 手臂
□背部	□ 脚踝	□ 腹部

Now complete the sentence.

胸,	腰,	腹,	腿,	脚,	背,	肘 and 膝 share
the ra	adical		, w	hich m	neans	

Match the verbs with their meanings.

1 蹲	a grip
2 挺	b bend
3 收	c stride
4 握	d cling
5 贴	e straighten
6 跨	f suck in
7 弯	g squat

Now complete the sentences.

蹲, 跨, 踢	share the rad	ical	, which
means	挺,握,	扶 and 抬 s	hare the
radical	, which mean	S.	11014

Work in pairs. Work out the meanings of the words and complete the table.

极	极快 extremely fast
站 直 straight	站直
挺 straighten, stick out 收 suck in	挺胸收腹
挺	挺直
加	加长

- Read Steve's new column about Chinese kung fu on page 136 and answer the questions.
  - 1 中国功夫,除了精彩的动作和极快的速度之外,有什么特别的?

Lesson 2 Unit 10 + 13!

- 2 文中写到的基本功的名字是什么?
- 3 这个基本功为什么很重要?
- 4 对初学者来说,需要注意什么?



蹲马步是中国功夫中最重要的基本功之一。练习蹲马步可以加强腿部的力量, 也会为学习中国功夫打下很好的基础。我们一起来试试吧!

首先,身体站直,挺胸收腹。 双手握拳,放在腰部,两肘紧贴 身体。



然后,右脚向右跨一小步, 左脚向左跨一小步。两脚之间的 距离是三个脚宽。脚尖向前。 现在,膝盖自然弯曲,慢慢向下 薄,直到大腿与地面平行。请注意, 膝盖不要超过脚尖。一定要保持后背



挺直,眼睛向眼睛看,重心身体中间。 持这个姿势分钟,并逐渐加长时间。

动作看起 来很简单,但 对于初学者来

说很难做到位。不要急,慢慢来。刚 开始练习蹲马步的时间可以很短,以 后再逐渐加长。

#### 生词 New words

the second secon					
jí		dūn		jùlí	
极	extremely	蹲	squat	距离	distance
sùdù		jīběngōng		jiǎojiān	
速度	speed	基本功	basic skill	脚尖	tip of the toes
Wò-hǔ cáng-lóng		jiāqiáng		xīgài	
《卧虎藏龙》	Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon	加强	strengthen	膝盖	knee .
gāoshǒu	Thuden Dragon	zhí		wānqū	
高手	master	直	straight	弯曲	bend
zhúlín		tǐngxiōng shōufù		zhídào	
竹林	bamboo forest	挺胸 收腹	chest out, stomach in	直到	until
dădòu		wòquán		dìmiàn	
打斗	fight	握拳	make a fist	地面	ground
chăngmiàn		yāobù		pingxing	
场面	scene	腰部	waist area	平行	parallel
wàizài		zhŏu		băochí	
外在	outside, exterior	肘 .	elbow	保持	maintain
xíngshì		jĭntiē		hòubèi	
形式	form, formality	紧贴	cling to, against	后背	back of the body
dàibiǎo		kuà		zhōngjiān	
代表	represent	跨	step, stride	中间	middle
shēngming		bù		zīshì	
生命	life	步	step	姿势	posture, pose
lĭjiě		zhījiān		dàowèi	
理解	understand	之间	between	到位	in the right position

#### **5** Complete the passage with the correct words.

基础 看着 初学者 挺直 正确 提高 受伤 按照 弯曲 注意

作为, 学习网球一定要打好
,动作。如果打球的习惯不
好,不但不能 打球的水平,还可能
让自己的肌肉和骨头。初学者应该
哪几点呢?
首先手要紧握球拍,眼睛要
球; 其次, 双腿要保持活动, 击球的时候要
站稳,并且身体的重心要低,膝盖,
而上身要, 不要弯腰。站在底线
(baseline) 中点附近等对方击球,根据球的路
线调整 (adjust) 击球的位置 (position)。

对初学者来说, 先 \_\_\_\_\_ 这几条练习, 慢慢来, 不要着急。

- Draw a picture of the final pose according to the instructions.
  - 1身体站直,挺胸收腹。
  - 2 抬起右腿,直到大腿和地面平行,膝盖自然弯曲。
  - 3 然后用左手握住右脚,慢慢抬起,直 到小腿与地面平行。右手放在右边膝 盖上。
  - 4 左腿直立,保持一分钟。

Now work in pairs. Compare your picture with your partner's.

Work in pairs. Talk about a basic pose in your favourite sport and the steps to form it. Use Activities 4 and 6 to help you.

Now write down instructions to form the pose. Include the tips for beginners.

## Language in use

Expressing regularity using

往往 🚾 常常

#### Look at the example pairs. Sentences marked with \* are incorrect.

- 1a 北京的沙尘暴往往出现在四五月。
  - b 北京的沙尘暴常常出现在四五月。
- 2 a 他常常感冒。
  - b\*他往往感冒。
- 3 a 春天天气变化大,老人和孩子往往容易感冒。
  - b 春天天气变化大,老人和小孩子常常容易感冒。
- 4a 大减价往往出现在节日前后。
  - b 大减价常常出现在节日前后。
- 5 a\*星期六他往往去图书馆。
  - b 星期六他常常去图书馆。
- 6 a\*以后我们会往往去看你。
  - b以后我们会常常去看你。

### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 Both 往往 and 常常 are adverbs expressing a repeated action.
- □ 2 往往 and 常常 are interchangeable.
- □ 3 While 常常 is used only to emphasize the repeating nature of the action, 往往 focuses on the regularity of the action and its cause.
- □ 4 常常 can be used in the future tense while 往往 cannot.

## 2 Complete the sentences with 往往 or 常常.

- 1下个学期我们会\_\_\_\_\_去中国城。
- 2 初学者\_\_\_\_\_重心不稳,导致动作不准确。
- 4 总是迟到的人\_\_\_\_不受欢迎。
- 5 节日期间城市的交通状况\_\_\_\_\_特别糟糕。

The preposition

按照

#### Look at the examples.

Subject/Topic	按照	Noun phrase	Verb
请你	按照	老师的 要求	写完 作业。
弹钢琴, 你得	按照	正确的 方法	练习。
他是一个非常好的小学老师, 你应该	按照	他的建议	去教育孩子。
这个菜我是	按照	菜谱	做的。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- 1 按照 means "in accordance with".
- 2 按照 is always followed by a noun phrase.
- 3 The preposition phrase with 按照 can appear either before or after the verb phrase.

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 You should drive in accordance with the local traffic laws.
- 2 According to the plan, we should finish the task by the end of next March.
- 3 You should practise Chinese pronunciation according to the method suggested by the teacher.
- 4 In accordance with the requirement of the company, he submitted three recommendation letters.
- 5 I do not like travelling based on the information provided by the guidebook. I'd like to explore the places myself.

Expressing future plans using

等……了

#### Look at the examples.

- 1 等你毕业了,我们就一起去中国。
- 2 等我们退休了,就回老家去。
- 3 等孩子们长大了,父母就都老了。
- 4 等你学好中文了,就可以看懂唐诗了。
- 5 等你从英国回来了,再继续学习中文吧。
- 6 等天气好一点了,我们再去外面打网 球吧。

	No	w	check the correct explanations.	
		1	The first clause with 等了 is stating a hypothetical situation or a future event.	
		2	等······了 literally means "wait until".	
		3	等······了 is stating an actual event that has already occurred.	10000
		4	The second clause is a future plan which is based on the realization of the condition in the first clause.	
2			in pairs. Tell each other three things you to put off doing until you finish your studies.	THE RESERVE
	等	我	毕业了,。	
3	Cor	np	lete the passage.	
	我:	最	想做的三件事情是, ,和。	
	等	我	了,我。	
	竺		了 我	

等 了,我

The difference **刚才** and **刚** 

#### Look at the sentences.

- 1 刚才我去了一趟图书馆。
- 2 马克刚才给父母打了一个电话。
- 3 你刚才说什么, 我没有听清楚。
- 4 刚才有人找你。
- 5 我刚学了一年中文。
- 6 他刚吃完饭就出去了。
- 7 刚学开车的时候,千万不能太紧张了。
- 8 火车刚开走。

Now com	plete the	explanations	with	刚才	or XII.
				123-7	. 177.

- is a time expression which literally means "a moment ago", and can be placed before or after the subject.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ is an adverb indicating "just (now)", and has to be placed right before the verb.
- 3 While \_\_\_\_\_ always refers to the time immediately before the current moment, \_\_\_\_ indicates that the action was just completed a relatively short period of time ago. They are not interchangeable.

## ☑ Complete the sentences with 例 or 刚才.

- 1 \_\_\_\_我去了王老师的办公室。
- 2 他\_\_\_\_\_说完话,就有很多人问问题。
- 3 我\_\_\_\_开始学习打网球,还需要多 练习。
- 4 \_\_\_\_给我打电话的人是你吗?
- 5他\_\_\_\_从中国回来,中文说得很好。
- Turn to page 194 for grammar reference.

## Communication activity

- Work in pairs. Prepare a presentation on a basic sporting pose or movement with learning tips for beginners.
- Work with another pair.

Pair A Present the pose or movement you prepared in Activity 1.

**Pair B** Try the pose or movement which Pair A presents to you.

Change roles when you're ready.

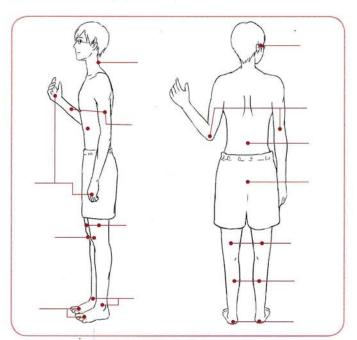
Decide who has given the clearest instructions.



Turn to pages 176 and 182 for more speaking practice.

## Review and practice

Label the body parts.



## **Cultural corner**

## Group exercises in China

In China, group exercises in the form of *tai chi* and slow-motion dance are very popular with middle-aged and senior citizens, particularly in urban areas. People visiting China for the first time are often surprised by the early morning or late night scenes of large groups of Chinese seniors exercising in unison, in a community park, to the rhythms of traditional music. Group exercise strengthens the body, helps the treatment of chronic

conditions such as arthritis and is even alleged to slow the ageing process. In addition to health benefits, group exercises provide retirees with an opportunity to socialize with people of their own age, sharing their happiness, sadness and opinions. Younger people rarely participate in these group exercises, either because of their busy schedules which leave no room for physical exercise, or because they prefer to work out at the gym.

1 1	<b>仙</b> 们	的关系很不	(	move in tai chi .
	33. ASSETUTE	的人永祝和 b 之一		太极拳第一式
			2000 100	<b>太</b> 似筝另一式
		侯,一定要 <u> </u>	女至	一、身体站直,左脚向左跨一小步。
	检查。	Section 1	1	
a	加长	b 加强	c 加重	两脚之间距离与肩膀同宽, 脚尖向
3 5	天气不好的时	付候,人们	心情	前;手臂自然向下,两手放在大腿
t	也很糟糕。	30)		外; 眼睛向前看。
a	往往	b 常常	ca或b	
4	往前走	, 就可以找到	那个书店。	二、两臂慢慢向前抬起,直到与地面
a	ı 一直	b 直到	c 挺直 '	平行, 两手之间距离与肩膀同宽, 手
5 1	你 开始	台练习马步,于	万不能	心向下。
5	太急。			
a	刚才	<b>b</b> 刚	c 就	三、上身保持挺直,膝盖弯曲,慢慢
		巴这张桌子		下蹲;同时两肘弯曲,双手自然落下
	边去。			(fall)。身体重心在两腿中间。身体
		b 扶	c抬	下蹲和两臂落下要同时进行。
7 7	在发展中国家	家,人民的	水平	
	还需要提高。			Work out the meaning of the expressions.
		b 生活	c出生	1 与肩膀同宽:
8	马步是	是中国功夫的基	基本功。	2 自然向下:
		b 跨	SCALL STATES	3 向前抬起:
				4 手心:
3 Tran	nslate the sente	ences into Chines	e.	5 上身:
1	injured my kne	e while running in	the park	6 下蹲:
У	esterday.			7 同时:
	He has sprained			Now down and to the many design at the state of
	They probably woroject accordin	on't be able to fing g to the plan.	ish the	Now demonstrate the move to each other.

Complete the sentences with the correct words.

4 People often (most likely) feel homesick

5 Do you have any tips for learning Chinese for

during holidays.

beginners?

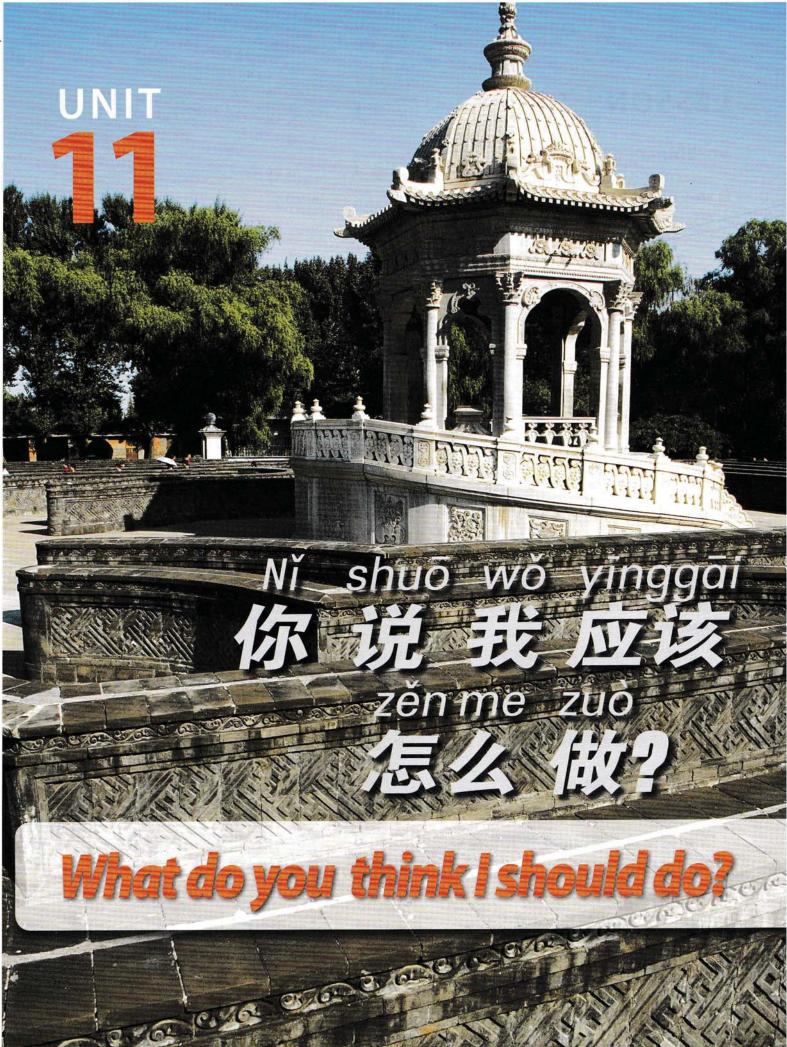
Write a brief instruction about a physical movement or pose that you use when exercising.

Work in pairs. Read the instructions for the very first

# Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

唉	àĩ	interj.	(a sighing sound)	₹ 平行	pípovípo	adi	parallal
<del></del>		-	in accordance	千万	píngxíng qiãnwàn	adj.	parallel
	ànzhào	prep.	with	7 //	•	adv.	<u> </u>
保持	băochí	v.	maintain	神奇	shāng shéngí	V.	hurt
步	bù	n.	step	生命	•	adj.	magic
擦	cā	V.	spread on, apply	速度	shēngming sùdù	n.	
场面	chăngmiàn	n.	scene	还及	tái	<i>v</i> .	speed
处理	chůtí	V.	treat, deal with	 疼		V.	raise
打斗	dădàu	٧.	fight		téng tĭngxiōng	V.	chest out,
	dàibiǎo	V.	represent	挺胸收腹	shōufù		stomach in
大夫	dàifu	n.	doctor ,	脱	tuö	V.	
到位	dàowèi	adj.	in the right position		wàzi	n.	socks
地面	dìmiàn	n.	ground	外在	wàizài	adj.	outside, exterior
跌倒	diēdǎo	v.	fall down	弯曲	wāngū	V.	bend
蹲	dûn	v.	squat	•	wängwäng	adv.	more often than not
	fàngxīn	v.	rest assured	· 稳	wěn	adj.	steady
扶	fú	v.	prop up, support	握拳	wòquán	v.	make a fist
高手	gãoshŏu	n.	master	膝盖	xīgài	n.	knee
骨头	gŭtou	n.		<b>:</b>	xiàoguŏ	n.	effect
骨折	gűzhé	V.	bone fracture	形式	xíngshì	n.	form, formality
后背	hòubèi	n.	back of the body	腰部	yāobù	n.	waist area
	huódòng	v.	stay active	: 一般	yìbān	adj.	
基本功	jībĕngōng	n.	basic skill	用力	yònglì	v.	put forth one's strength
极	jí	adv.	<del></del>	站	zhàn	V.	stand
加强	jiāqiáng	V.	strengthen	•	zhijiān	n.	between
脚	ji <b>ă</b> o	n.		直	zhí	adj.	DC (11 CC11
脚踝	jiăohuái	n.	ankle	直到	zhídào	v.	until
脚尖	jíǎojìān	n.	tip of the toes	中间	zhōngjiān	n.	middle
紧贴	jĭntië	V.	cling to, against	<b>重心</b>	zhòngxīn	n.	centre of gravity
距离	jùlí	n.	<del></del>	· 主· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	zhŏu		elbow
跨	kuà	v.	step, stride	: N · 竹林		n.	
拉伤	lāshāng	v.	strain	•	zhúlín	n.	bamboo forest
	lĭjiě	v.	understand	- 姿势	zīshì wà hở	n.	posture, pose
练习	liànxí	v.	practise	:《卧虎藏龙》	Wò-hǔ cáng-lóng		Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon
扭	niů	V.	sprain	•			



## LESSON 1

## Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Talk about going on a first date in your own culture and complete the table below.



- Steve meets Amanda at a café to catch up. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 史蒂夫觉得这次出差怎么样?
  - 2 史蒂夫的脚怎么了?
  - 3 史蒂夫为什么问起王玉?
  - 4 阿曼达给史蒂夫出了什么主意?
  - El Check the correct statements.
    - □ 1 史蒂夫在少林寺扭伤了脚。
    - □ 2 阿曼达觉得她的选修课非常 枯燥。
    - □ 3 阿曼达常常见到王玉。
    - □ 4 史蒂夫告诉阿曼达他喜欢王玉。
    - □ 5 史蒂夫觉得中国女孩子很直接。

史蒂夫: 阿曼达, 好久不见! 你最近怎么样?

阿曼达: 我挺好的。你呢? 这次出差怎么样?

史蒂夫: 收获很大。那儿的人很好,很 支持我的工作。

阿曼达: 太好了! 可是你的脚怎么了?

史蒂夫: 我从少林寺回来以后, 很想学几招功夫, 结果不小心扭伤了

脚踝。

阿曼达: 严重不严重? 还疼吗?

史蒂夫: 已经好多了, 走路没问题。说

说你吧, 最近忙什么呢?

阿曼达: 跟你比起来, 我的生活就太枯

燥了,不是上课,就是写作业。不过这学期的选修课我很喜欢,不光学习了中国历史知识,中文也进步了不少。

史蒂夫: 你的中文的确进步很大! 对了, 你最近见到王玉了吗?

阿曼达: 当然, 我们经常见面。怎么了?

史蒂夫: 没什么, 我就是随便问问。

阿曼达: 你怎么只问起她一个人, 我看你是喜欢上王玉了吧?

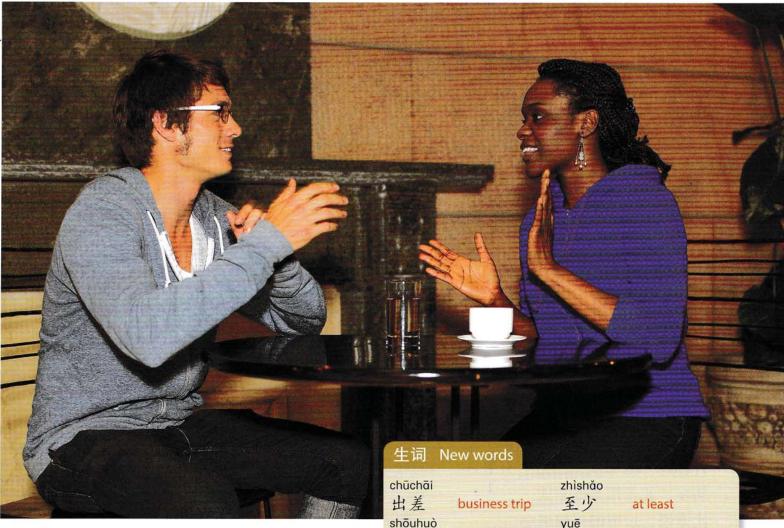
史蒂夫: 嗯……大概是吧。

阿曼达: 那你应该跟她表示一下啊! 男

孩子应该主动一点!

史蒂夫: 你说我应该怎么做?

阿曼达:这个……我觉得你至少得约她



出去吃个晚饭,或者喝 个咖啡什么的。见面的 时候给她一个拥抱,热 情一点。

史蒂夫: 好主意。那你说什么样

的地方合适呢?

阿曼达: 当然是浪漫一点的啦。给

她买一束鲜花或者别的什

么小礼物。告别的时候,

吻她一下。

史蒂夫: 这个……中国女孩子好

像不喜欢那么直接吧?

阿曼达: 你自己看着办吧。祝你

好运!

chūchāi		zhìshǎo	
出差	business trip	至少	at least
shōuhuò		yuē	
收获	harvest, gain	约	invite, date
zhīchí		yōngbào	
支持	support	拥抱	hug
bù xiǎoxīn		làngmàn	
不小心	by accident	浪漫	romantic
gēn		shù	
跟		束	bunch
bĭ qĭlai	compared with	xiānhuā	
比起来	vvidi	鲜花	fresh flower
kūzào		lĭwù	
枯燥	boring	礼物	gift
jìnbù		gàobié	
进步	make progress, improve	告别	say goodbye
suíbiàn		wěn	
随便	casual	吻	kiss
duàn		zhíjiē	
段	period (of time)	直接	direct
dàgài		kànzhe bàn	
大概	probably	看着办	do as one sees fit
biǎoshì		hǎoyùn	
表示	express	好运	good luck
zhǔdòng 主动	on one's own initiative		

4	Work in pairs. Discuss and write down the meaning of
	the phrases.
	1 随便问问

2 喜欢上

3 主动一点

4 看着办

Complete the passage with the words in the box.

直接 表示 礼物 喜欢上 约会 拥抱 传统 往往 什么的 恋爱

中国人比较	,他们	1
的方式没有西方		
一个	人,一般不会	÷
告诉她(他),_	只台	告诉自己的好
朋友,或者用其	他方式	一下。
比方说,过节的	时候送小	,常
常给她(他)写	信、打电话_	o
第一次	的时候,身	月女一般不会
,更	不会吻对方。	

Three college students are talking about their problems. Predict what the problems are.

年级	问题
1	
2	
3	

Now listen and complete the table.



Work in pairs. Listen again and check your answers.

## Pronunciation and speaking



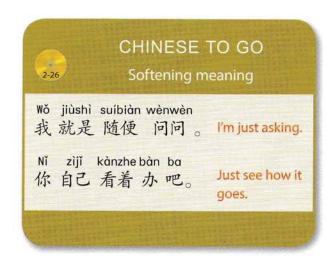
Listen and repeat.

- 1 是吗?
- 2 怎么了?
- 3 嗯……
- 4 这个……
- 5 对了, ……
- 6 说说你吧!
- 7 你说……

Now look at the table below. Write the expressions in the correct places.

	Function	Expression
a	to encourage the other speaker to continue the topic	
b	to fill in pauses in the conversation, allowing more time to think	
c	to switch to a new topic	
d	to seek an opinion	

Work in pairs. Talk about the students' problems in Activity 6 on this page and give your advice.



## LESSON 2

## Reading and writing

Work in pairs. Look at the table below. Talk about what 费 means and write down more words with this character.

tuition fee
living expenses
travelling expenses
monthly/annual fee
service charge

Now talk about which of the above you personally need to pay.

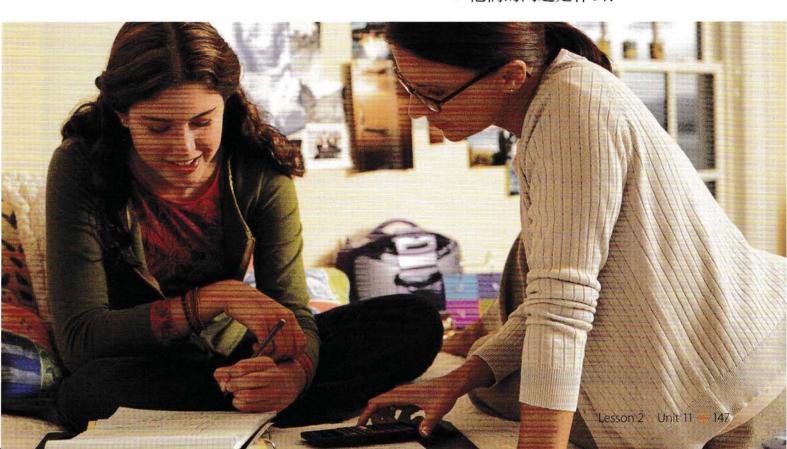
Work in pairs. Talk about the advantages and disadvantages of students doing part-time jobs. Work in pairs. Look at the words and work out what they mean. Use a dictionary if necessary.

折磨	冷淡	误会	难过
矛盾	着急	难受	烦恼

Now talk about the picture. Use the words from the box.



- 227 A Read the letters to an agony aunt on page 148 and answer the questions.
  - 1 人们是怎么称呼她的? 她姓什么?
  - 2 问问题的人都来自哪里,叫什么?
  - 3 他们的问题是什么?



#### 陈姐姐.

你好。

我是一个大学二年级的学生。最近很多同学利用业余时 间在校外打工赚钱,不再向父母要生活费。我也很想自己赚 钱,不再依靠父母,但是打工很花时间,我担心会影响学习。 不过也有人说,工作经验比书本知识更重要,而且课堂里学 到的知识在社会上往往用不到。我很矛盾,不知道该不该去 打工。陈姐姐, 你的意见呢?

6 6 6 6 6 6 6 6

上海, 小雨

陈女士:

我今年刚刚大学毕业。我的性格非常内向, 跟人聊天的 时候,我经常不知道说什么,尤其是跟女生。最近我喜欢上 了我的一位同事,一个很优秀的女孩,可是我几乎没办法跟 她说话。每当我见到她的时候,我都感觉到自己的心在狂跳, 却只能假装对她很冷淡。我猜她已经误会我了。

我心里很着急也很难过, 但又不知道该怎么办, 这种感

2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 3

觉真是折磨人啊! 只好向您求助了!

杭州, 小李

## 陈大姐:

我很喜欢我现在的大学生活,但是有一件事让我很烦恼。 我们宿舍有些同学的父母或者亲戚来看他们的时候, 总是会邀 请全宿舍的同学出去吃饭,而且还给我们买很多零食。我来自 农村,家里挺穷的。我父母在外面打工赚钱不容易,如果来学 校看我, 光路费就得花不少钱, 所以他们从来没有来过我的学 校。而且就算他们来看我,大概也不会请我的同学们吃饭。老 吃别人的东西却从来不请客, 我心里很难受, 也不知道别人在 背后会怎么说我。陈大姐, 你说我该怎么办呢?

南京, 张强

### 生词 New words

lìyòng 利用	make use of	jīhū 几乎	almost	nánguò 难过	upset	lùfèi 路费	travelling expenses
yèyú shíjiān 业余时间	spare time	bànfǎ 办法	way, means	zhémó 折磨	torture	jiùsuàn 就算	16
fùmǔ 父母	father and mother, parents	měidāng 每当	every time	zhǐhǎo 只好	have to	···· yě ······赴	even if
shēnghuófèi 生活 费	living expenses	xīn 心	heart	qiúzhù 求助	ask for help	老 biérén	always
jīngyàn 经验	experience	kuáng 狂	crazy	Hángzhōu 杭州	Hangzhou	别人 qǐngkè	other people, others
shèhuì 社会	society	tiào 跳	jump, beat	fánnǎo 烦恼	worried	请客	invite sb to dinner
máodùn 矛盾	conflict; conflicting	què 却	but, yet	qīnqi 亲戚	relative	难受 bèihòu	(feel) bad, embarrassed
nǔshì 女士	Ms	jiǎzhuāng 假装	pretend '	yāoqǐng 邀请	invite	背后	back
nèixiàng 内向	introverted	lěngdàn 冷淡	cold (in manner)	língshí 零食	snack	Nánjīng 南京	Nanjing
yóuqí 尤其	especially	wùhuì 误会	misunderstand	nóngcūn 农村	rural area, countryside		
yōuxiù 优秀	excellent	zháojí 着急	worried, concerned	qióng 穷	poor		

Work in pairs. Talk about why the writers are asking for advice. Use the words from the letters on page 148 to complete the table.

	矛盾的事				
小雨	和 哪个更重要				
小李	见到喜欢的女孩子明明 要	却			
张强	总吃别人的却无法				

Read the beginning of the replies to the letters and write down the correct names.

你好!		
关于在校学生该不该打	口的问题,	我是这么
看的		

非常感谢你的来信。 能感觉得到你对这个女孩子非常在意……

一一: 谢谢你的问题。 你是不是觉得,家庭条件的不同造成了你跟你 的同学之间的不同? ……

- Write a letter to an agony aunt about a problem.Say:
  - · who you are;
  - what your problem is and what's weighing on your mind;
  - the kind of advice you hope to hear from her.

## Language in use

Implicit comparisons using

#### Look at the examples.

- 1 你应该对新同学热情一点。
- 2 我希望我的钱多一点。
- 3 跟他说话不用太客气,直接一点。
- 4 汉字课的确枯燥了一点。
- 5 明天早一点来吧。
- 6 这个大学什么都好,就是学费贵了一点。

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 ······一点 simply means "a little bit ..."
- 2 ······一点 indicates an implicit comparison, meaning "a little bit more ... than ..."
- □ 3 ······一点 is often used in imperative sentences expressing demands, suggestions and orders.

#### Choose the correct translations.

- 1 The weather is a little bit hot today.
  - a 今天天气有一点热。
  - b 今天天气热了一点。
  - c 今天天气一点热。
- 2 I have to pretend to be a little happier.
  - a 我得假装高兴一点。
  - b 我得假装一点高兴。
  - c 我得假装有一点高兴。
- 3 Add a little bit of sugar in the coffee.
  - a 给咖啡加一点糖。
  - 6 给咖啡加有一点糖
  - c给咖啡加糖一点。

Expressing "even if" 就算······也·····

#### Look at the examples.

	Clause 1	C	lause 2		
就算	就算 Other		也	Other	
就算	没有地图,	那个地方	也	很容易 找到。	
就算	你按照正 确的方法 练习,	你	也	得花一 两年才 能练好 马步。	
就算	没有考试,	上这门 选修课	也	要花很 多时间。	
就算	大学成绩再好,	毕业以后	也	不一定 找得到 好工作。	

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 就算······也······ is a conjunctive structure. It indicates that even if the condition in clause 1 is realized, the fact/result in clause 2 will not be affected.
- 2 就算 is identical in meaning to 即使, but 即使 is a little bit more formal.
- The subject of the second clause can either be dropped or appear after to

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- Even if you are extremely busy, you should still call your parents from time to time.
- Even if the pay is good, you should not spend too much time doing part-time work. I believe you can finish the task even without any help.

Even if it is snowing tomorrow, the football match will still be on.

#### Expressing contrast of meaning using

却

#### Look at the examples.

	Clause 2				
Clause 1	可是/ 但是	Subject	却	Other	
这些知识书 本上学不到,	可是		却	很有用。	
他邀请了 全班同学 去他家,			却	没有邀请我。.	
这本汉英字 典很好,		我	却	用不到了。	
虽然他很喜欢她,	可是	他		不知道怎 么表示。	
虽然我们有	可是	我们	却	还是好 朋友。	

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 却 can be combined with 虽然 and/or 可是 to emphasize the contrast of meaning.
- 2 却 has to appear after the subject of the second clause if it is not dropped or implied.
- 🗍 💈 却 is interchangeable with 可是.

### Complete the sentences using 却.

- 1 他是美国人,
- 2 虽然这些书本知识可能以后用不到,
- 3 练习功夫很辛苦,
- 4 送花虽然很浪漫
- 5 学外语记单词非常枯燥,
- 6 上次中国之行虽然时间很短,

## The difference 总是 and 老(是)

#### Look at the pairs of sentences.

- 1 a 他总是在这个饭馆跟朋友吃饭。
  - b他老在这个饭馆跟朋友吃饭。
- 2 a 我跟你说过很多次注意安全, 你总是不听。
  - b 我跟你说过很多次注意安全, 你老 是不听。
- 3 a 过情人节, 他总是送我鲜花和巧克力。
  - b 过情人节, 他老送我鲜花和巧克力。
- 4 a 你怎么总是跟同学发生矛盾呢?
  - b 你怎么老是跟同学发生矛盾呢?

#### Now check the correct explanations.

- □ 1 总是 and 老(是) are similar in meaning, indicating something happens all the time.
- □ 2 总是 and 老(是) are interchangeable in most cases.
- □ 3 总是 strictly indicates the high frequency of the event, while 老(是) implies an accusatory tone by the speaker.

#### Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 When I ask him for help, he is always willing.
- 2 Taking the Underground is not always faster than the bus.
- 3 He is always late for class!
- 4 The room is always dark and cold!
- 5 The price of petrol is always going up!
- 6 He can always find delicious and inexpensive restaurants wherever he travels to.
- 7 She always works in the library on Saturdays.
- 8 She always works in the library on Saturdays (and as her boyfriend, I am very upset about it!)
  - Turn to page 195 for grammar reference.

## LESSON 3

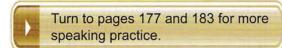
## Communication activity

Work in pairs. Your school paper plans to start a new Q&A column and is calling for ideas from the students. Choose one issue which concerns you most.

Now write a sample column with questions and answers.

Present your column to the class.

Now vote for the three best columns.





Cultural corner

## Review and practice

- Complete the sentences with the correct words.
  - 1 上大学了, 你应该 \_\_\_\_, 不要总是靠 别人。
    - a 一点独立 b 有一点独立 c 独立一点
  - 2 有件事让我很烦恼。我儿子\_\_\_\_上课 的时候睡觉!
    - a 总是 b 老是 c 总之
- 3 我选了艺术史专业, \_\_\_\_\_我的父母并 不支持。
  - a 而且 b 可是 c 却

- 4 这篇新闻有些字看不懂,你也一 定可以明白大概的意思。
  - a 不管 b 就算
- c 无论
- 5 你 \_\_\_\_\_ 得用三年时间才能学好中文。
  - a 至少
- **b** 最好 **c** 最多
- 6 完成这项任务需要很长一\_\_\_\_时间。

  - a 段 b 束
- 7 你 \_\_\_\_\_她了,其实她很喜欢你。
- a 误会 b 折磨 c 烦恼
- 8 这种事我没办法提前做计划,只能\_\_\_\_。
  - a 看着办 b 看着 c 看来

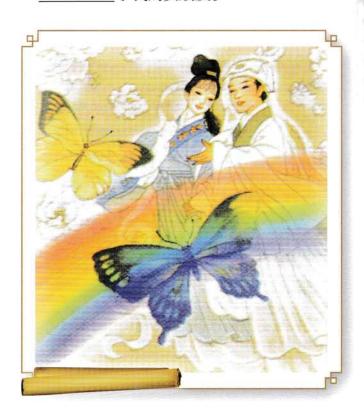
## The Butterfly Lovers

The tragic love story of Liang Shanbo and Zhu Yingtai, also referred to as The Butterfly Lovers, is often regarded as the Chinese equivalent of Romeo and Juliet. The ancient story tells the tale of Zhu Yingtai, the only daughter of a wealthy family, and Liang Shanbo, a young scholar. Desperate to attend school, Zhu disguises herself as a young man. She meets Liang at school and falls in love with him. One day, Liang visits Zhu's home, whereupon she reveals her true identity and the two

declare their love for one another. However, without the knowledge of either lover, Zhu's father arranges her marriage to another man. Upon hearing this news Liang is heartbroken, and his health deteriorates until he dies. On Zhu's wedding day, she visits Liang's grave, when suddenly there is a clap of thunder and the grave opens. Zhu throws herself into the grave, and the lovers then emerge as a pair of butterflies and fly away together, never to be parted.

#### Complete the passage with the words in the box.

变成怎么办生活费遇到热情利用想着浪漫



Read Ms Chen's reply to Xiao Li's question on page 148 and guess the meaning of the following words.

信任	爱要说出口	微笑
共同的	对方	

小李:

你好。谢谢你对我的信任。

像你这样内向的男孩在表达感情时的确比较困难。要是因为害羞而让这个优秀的女孩误会你,真的很可惜。有句话说得好:"爱要说出口"。下次你见到这个女孩的时候,不要假装冷淡,要放松一点,对她微笑,随便说点什么。可以聊聊天气,说她今天的衣服很好看,或者问问她周末过得怎么样。等一两个星期后,你再约她出去喝个咖啡什么的。要是你不好意思直接约她出去,你可以向你和她共同的朋友求助。

另外,我觉得性格太内向的话,对工作也没有好处。你应该从现在开始练习多跟别人说话,说话的时候尽量发现对方感兴趣的话题,要看着对方的眼睛。刚开始可能不习惯,可是慢慢地你就会发现跟女孩子聊天没那么困难!

祝你好运!

陈思

#### Now answer the questions.

- 1 How does Ms Chen begin and finish her letter?
- 2 How does Ms Chen show her understanding of Xiao Li's problem?
- 3 Does she give any specific suggestions to Xiao Li?
- 4 What general suggestion does Ms Chen give to Xiao Li?
- Choose another letter from page 148 and write a reply on behalf of Ms Chen. Use Activity 3 to help you.

## Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

办法	bànfă	n.	way, means	难受	nánshòu	adj.	
背后	bèihòu	n.	back	内向	nèixiàng	adj.	introverted
	biăoshì	v.	express	农村	nóngcūn	n.	rural area, countryside
别人	biérén	n.	other people, others	女士	nůshì	n.	Ms
不小心	bù xiǎoxīn			亲戚	qīnqi	n.	relative
	chūchāi	v.	business trip	请客	qĭngkè	v.	invite sb to dinner
大概	dàgài	adv.	probably	穷	qióng	adj.	poor
段	duàn	measure word		求助	qiúzhù	v.	ask for help
烦恼	fánnăo	adj.	worried		què	adv.	but, yet
父母	fùmŭ	n.	father and '	社会	shèhuì	n.	
29 I 20			mother, parents	生活费	shēnghuófèi	n.	living expenses
告别	gàobié	V.	say goodbye	收获	shōuhuò	n.	harvest, gain
跟 比起来	gēn…bĭ qĭlai		compared with	束	shù	measure word	bunch
好运	hǎoyùn	n.	good luck	随便.	suíbiàn	adj.	
几乎	jīhū	adv.	almost	跳	tiào	v.	jump, beat
假装	jiǎzhuāng	V.	pretend	吻	wěn	v.	kiss
进步	jìnbù	v.	make progress,	<u></u>	wùhuì	v.	misunderstand
	25 To 100 Sept		improve	鲜花	xiānhuā	n.	fresh flower
经验	jīngyàn	n.		N.	xīn	n.	heart
就算 也	jiùsuànyě		even if	邀请	yāoqĭng	v.	invite
看着办	kànzhe bàn		do as one sees fit	业余时间	yèyú shíjiān		spare time
枯燥	kūzào	adj.	boring	拥抱	yōngbào	v.	5-34
狂	kuáng	adj.	crazy		yōuxiù	adj.	excellent
,—	làngmàn	adj.	romantic	尤其	yóuqí	adv.	especially
老	lăo	adv.	always	-	yuē	v.	invite
冷淡	lěngdàn	adj.	cold (in manner)	着急	zháojí	v.	<del></del>
· 4 0C	lĭwù	n.	gift	折磨	zhémó	v.	torture
利用	lìyòng	v.	make use of	-	zhīchí	v.	support
零食	língshí	n.	snack	直接	zhíjiē	adj.	direct
	157		travelling	只好	zhĭhăo	adv.	have to
路费	lùfèi	n.	expenses	至少	zhìshǎo	adv.	
矛盾	máodùn	n./adj.	conflict; conflicting		zhǔdòng	adj.	on one's own initiative
每当	měidāng	prep.	every time	杭州	Hángzhōu	n.	. Hangzhou
	nánguò	adj.	upset	南京	Nánjīng	n.	Nanjing



## LESSON 1

## Vocabulary and listening

Work in pairs. Say what you expect from your ideal job. Use the words in the box.

## 理想的工作

东奔西走	新鲜
与人打交道	稳定
体验生活	旅行



- 2-28
- Steve is having his first date with Wang Yu at a restaurant. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions.
  - 1 史蒂夫是怎么跟王玉打招呼的?
  - 2 史蒂夫送了王玉什么礼物?
  - 3 王玉毕业头几年打算做什么?
  - 4 王玉喜欢什么样的男人?
  - 5 史蒂夫是怎么向王玉表示喜欢 的? 王玉是怎么回答的?

史蒂夫: 王玉!

(史蒂夫拥抱了王玉)

王玉: 哎呀, 史蒂夫, 你这是干什么?

史蒂夫:对不起……就是拥抱一下,很

久没有见到你了!

王玉: 没关系。不过你也知道,在中国,这不大合适。

史蒂夫: 是啊……不过阿曼达说可以。

王玉:明白了。咱们坐下说吧。

史蒂夫: 这盒巧克力送给你。

王玉: 谢谢。难道又是阿曼达的主意?

史蒂夫: 不是。是我知道你爱吃巧克力。

王玉: 好吧, 你太客气了。你这次出

差怎么样?

史蒂夫: 很棒! 我采访了一些很有意思的人。改天给你看照片吧。

王玉: 好啊。看来你很喜欢当记者。

工五: 对門。有术你很喜欢自记者。

史蒂夫: 是的。我喜欢跟各种各样的人 打交道, 去不同的地方, 体验 不一样的生活。这样生活总会 有新鲜感。你呢? 你毕业以后 打算做什么?

王玉: 我还不知道呢。我很羡慕你的 工作,可以到处旅行。我理想 的工作是既有音乐又有旅行。 毕业以后的头几年我想到处走 走看看,但我也不想一辈子东

奔西走的。



史蒂夫:估计几年以后你就打算结婚、稳定下来了,对吧?

王玉: 也许吧。

史蒂夫: 我猜你理想的伴侣是一个顾

家的男人, 而且也热爱音乐,

像永民那样的,对不对?

王玉: 这可不好说。永民好是好,

可是他太安静了, 而我喜欢

热闹,又喜欢旅行。

史蒂夫: 太好了。不过,一个人旅

行挺寂寞的。这次出差,

一路上我都很想你……你

呢, 你想我吗?

王玉: 我们都挺想你的。

史蒂夫: 我是想问, 你想不想我?

王玉: 这个……我能不能不回答?

#### 生词 New words

āiyā	oh (expressing	lixiang	
哎呀	surprise)	理想	ideal
gàn		jì	
干	do, perform	既	الد مالد
hé		yòu	both
盒	box	又	unu
qiǎokèlì		tóu	
巧克力	chocolate	头	first
bàng		yíbèizi	
棒	fine, excellent,	一辈子	all one's life
17	Taritastic	döngbēn - xīzŏu	
nándào	(used to	东奔 西走	bustle about
难道	reinforce a	gūjì	
	rhetorical question)	估计	estimate,
găitiān	question	yěxů	reckon
改天	another day	也许	perhaps
gèzhŏng-gèyàn	THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T	wěndìng	
各种 各村	And the same of th	稳定	stable;
dă jiāodào		bànlů	stabilize
The second secon	deal with	伴侣	spouse, life
tǐyàn		gùjiā	partner
体验	experience	顾家	care about
xīnxiāngăn	схрененее	bù hắo shuō	one's family
新鲜感	sense of	不好说	hard to say
xiànmù	novelty	jìmò	naru to say
xianmu 羡慕	ODVA	寂寞	longly
	envy	双吴	lonely
dàochù			
到处	everywhere		

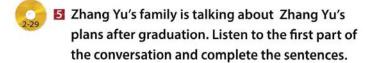
#### B Check the correct statements.

- □ 1 对于史蒂夫的拥抱, 王玉觉得不舒服。
- □ 2 阿曼达让史蒂夫送巧克力给王玉。
- □ 3 史蒂夫喜欢他的工作,因为可以赚 很多钱。
- □ 4 王玉很喜欢永民的性格。
- □ 5 王玉没有直接回答史蒂夫最后一个 问题。

Complete the passage with the words in the box.

浪漫	新鲜感	安全感	往往
矛盾	体验	折磨人	稳定

对于谈恋爱我总	是很		方面,
我喜欢	的男孩。	他们总	是能给
我带来不同的	,	让恋爱	总是有
,可是也	也常常很	_	,因为
我不知道他们明	天是不是	就变了。	另一方
面,让我有	的男	孩子,_	
不那么浪漫,虽然	然跟他们的	的关系一	般来说
很。			*



1	张宇的爸爸,	,和	将
	跟他一起讨论他	的打算	0

2	张宇的专	业是	o	他的同学毕
	业后有的	打算	,	还有人准备
	0	张宇不想		

Work in pairs. Look at the table and predict what suggestions Zhang Yu will get from his family.

人物	建议	原因
	当记者	
		稳定,有假期,轻松
爸爸		

Now listen to the second part of the conversation and complete the table.

Listen to both parts of the conversation again and check your answers to Activities 5 and 6.

## Pronunciation and speaking



- Listen to the following sentences. Notice the tones of the sentences created by the underlined expressions.
  - 1 难道又是阿曼达的主意?
  - 2 看来你很喜欢当记者。
  - 3 估计几年以后你就打算结婚了, 对吧?
  - 4 我猜你理想的伴侣是一个顾家的 男人。

Now work in pairs. Talk about what these expressions convey in each sentence.

- Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions using the underlined words in Activity 1.
  - 1 你觉得王玉喜欢史蒂夫吗?
  - 2 我觉得史蒂夫的工作挺有意思 的, 你说呢?
  - 3 你认为多大年龄结婚合适?
  - 4 男人不能既浪漫又顾家吗?



## LESSON 2

## Reading and writing

- Match the words with their opposite meanings.
  - 1 放松
- a 迟到
- 2 大方
- b 还钱
- 3 准时
- c紧张
- 4 欠钱
- d 小气
- Work in pairs. Talk about the most important qualities in an employee. Use the words in the box to help you.

尊重	准时	可靠
大方	自信	骄傲
幽默	优秀	坚持



Work in pairs. Talk about how to give a good impression on a first date. Write down your suggestions in the table below.

怎样给人留下好印象					
服装	可以穿得漂亮一点,不要太随便了。				
身体语言					
话题					



- Read the first passage on page 160 and choose the best answers.
  - 1 Where do you think this passage is from?
    - a a magazine
    - b a private diary
    - c a travel guide
  - 2 Choose the best title for the passage.
    - A 怎样约会
    - B初次约会怎样留下好印象
    - c 怎样吸引别人



- Read the second passage on page 160 and answer the questions.
  - 1 Where do you think this passage is from?
  - 2 Which answers to the questions do you agree with and why?

## 下面几条建议可以帮你在初次约会时给 对方留下好印象。

- 1要准时,或提前一点。这是尊重对方的表 现,也说明你是个可靠的人。
- 2 多倾听。避免过多谈论自己,要关心对方感 兴趣的话题。
- 3 不必过分热情。如果你特别热情,有时候会 吓到对方。
- 4 尽量放松,举止自然。谁都喜欢大方、自信 的人。
- 5 不要过分炫耀自己的成就。过多谈论自己的成就会让人觉得你太骄傲。
- 6 有一点幽默感。在合适的时候开开玩笑, 放松一下气氛。
- 7 注意细节。男士要为女士开门、请女士先坐下,等等。不管是男士还是女 士,都要注意克服一些不好的习惯,比如吃饭的时候总是接电话。

最后, 祝你初次约会顺利。



## 问题:初次约会的时候两人总要找个地方坐下, 吃点东西或者喝点什么。哪方付钱更合适呢?

回答一: 按照习惯应该是男方付钱。初次见面,咱

们男人不能显得太小气,是吧!

现代社会, 男女平等。AA制最好, 谁也

不欠谁的。

回答三: 这个没什么规定吧! 我认为男方可以主动付钱, 但是如果女方坚持, 一起

付也挺好啊。

回答四: 我是个女的。如果我对这个男人印象不错,我会让他付钱。如果不想跟他再

见面, 我会付自己的那份。

回答五: 我是男的。刚工作,工资不高。要是我一个月有三次约会,每次都是我付钱的

话,那我很快就破产了。如果女方主动提出付一半,我会对她印象很好。





#### 生词 New words

jiànyì	suggestion,	bìmiăn		xuànyào		píngděng	
建议	suggestion,	避免	avoid	炫耀	show off	平等	equal
chūcì 初次	first time	guòduō 过多	too much	chéngjiù 成就	achievement	AA zhì AA 制	go Dutch,
yuēhuì		tánlùn		jiāo' ào		zuìhǎo	split the bill
约会	date	谈论	talk about	骄傲	arrogant, proud	最好	best
duìfāng		huàtí		yōumògăn		qiàn	
对方	the other party	话题	topic	幽默感	sense of humour	欠	owe
liú		búbì		qìfēn	Hamour	guīdìng	
留	leave	不必	no need	气氛	atmosphere	规定	rule
yìnxiàng 印象	impression	guòfèn 过分	over, going too	xìjié 细节	detail	jiānchí 坚持	insist
zhǔnshí		xià	far	bùguǎn		fèn	
准时	punctual, on time	PF	scare	不管	no matter, despite	份	share
tíqián	advance,	jĭnliàng		kèfú		pòchăn	
提前	bring forward	尽量	to one's best	克服	overcome	破产	go broke
biǎoxiàn		fàngsōng		fù		tíchū	
表现	display, show	放松	relax	付	pay	提出	propose, bring up
kěkào		jůzhí		xiǎnde			Dring up
可靠	reliable	举止	manner	显得	look, seem		
qīngtīng 倾听	listen attentively	dàfang 大方	natural, tasteful, generous	xiǎoqi 小气	cheap, miserly		

#### 6 Look at these sentences from the passages.

- 1 如果你特别热情,有时候会吓到对方。
- 2 过多谈论自己的成就会让人觉得你太骄傲。
- **3** 要是我一个月有三次约会,每次都是我付钱的话,那我很快就破产了。

## Now write the following sentences in Chinese. Use the three ways of saying *if* ... *in turn* ...

- a If you are too quiet, people may think you are not interested.
- b If I spend too much money on clothes, I'll soon go bankrupt.
- c If you are too anxious, you'll make others anxious too.
- **d** If you choose a very expensive restaurant, people may think you are showing off.
- e If you are late, you may leave others with an impression of being unreliable.
- f If I like the one I meet, I may give him my number for further contact.

Look at the underlined words in the first passage on page 160. Underline similar words in the other pieces of advice.

Now write another piece of advice using the underlined words. Explain briefly why you think your advice is important.

Look at the answers to the question on page 160. Notice how each person explains his/her own reason.

Now write your reply. Give your own reasons.

## Language in use

Forming rhetorical questions using

难道

#### Look at the sentences.

- 1 难道你不希望给对方留下一个好印象?
- 2 小气的人难道会受欢迎吗?
- 3 你难道真的不明白我的心意?
- 4 初次约会就要AA制,难道这不奇怪吗?
- 5 难道这是我的错?
- 6 难道欠了别人的钱不应该还吗?

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 难道 is used to form rhetorical questions, giving force or emphasis to the tone.
- □ 2 难道 is always placed at the beginning of the rhetorical question.
- □ 3 难道 can be placed at the beginning of the sentence or right after the subject/topic.
- Rewrite the questions in Activity 1 as affirmative statements

你当然希望给对方留下一个好印象。

- B Complete the conversations with 难道.
  - 1 一怎么办?我不想做功课。
  - 2 一明天的历史考试我很紧张。
  - 3 一明天我们去动物园玩吧。
  - 4 一我太太的工资是多少,我都不知道。

phrases with 像……这/那样…

#### Look at the noun phrases.

像	Specific noun	那样/ 这样	General noun
像	永民	那样的	好男人
像	北京	那样的	大城市
像	美国	那样的	发达国家
像	王玉	这样	优秀的女 孩子
像	桂林	这样	环境优美 的地方
像	今天	这样的	天气

#### Now check the two correct explanations.

- □ 1 像······那样······ is used to form a noun phrase referring to a group of things/people/places.
- □ 2 What appears after 那样 is a specific example of the noun group.
- □ 3 那样 means "the kind of", while 像 means "like, as".
- Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions with 像……这/那样…….
  - 1 你喜欢什么样的女/男孩作你的 女/男朋友?
  - 2 你希望在什么地方旅行?
  - 3 你喜欢在什么商店买东西?
  - 4 你喜欢看什么电影?
  - 5 你最爱上什么课?
  - 6 你打算毕业以后在什么公司工作?

Polite counter - argument using

## ·······是······, 可是/就是······

#### Look at the conversations.

- 1 学校附近的那个中国饭馆很便宜。
  - 一便宜是便宜,可是味道一般,服务 也很差。
- 2 一我喜欢住在市中心,气氛总是很热闹。
  - 一热闹是热闹,就是太吵了,没有安 静的时候。
- 3 一你难道不喜欢坐火车旅行吗?
  - 一喜欢是喜欢,可是我最近没时间。
- 4 一 当新闻记者能全世界到处跑,好玩极了!
  - 一好玩是好玩,可是也非常辛苦。
- 5 一考上了好大学, 你难道不高兴吗?
  - 一高兴是高兴, 我就是担心学费太贵了。

#### Now check the two correct statements.

- The structure is used to offer a counterargument politely by partially agreeing with what was just said. The emphasis, however, is on the part after 可是/就是.
- The repeated adjective/modal verb in the first part of the structure is always positive in meaning.
- The repeated adjective/modal verb in the first part of the structure can be either negative or positive in meaning.
- 2 Complete the conversations with ······是·····,可是/就是······.
  - 1 一这份工作工资特别高。
  - 2 一史蒂夫真是个浪漫的男人。
  - 3 一 你一个人住这么大的房子,真让人 羡慕!

The conjunctive

既……又……

#### Look at the sentences.

Subject/Topic		Clause 1	A PORT	Clause 2
西安	既	有历史悠久 的城墙	又	有现代化 的高楼。
王玉	既	聪明	又	可爱。
我	既	听不懂法语	又	不会说。
波音747 飞机	既	大	又	安全。
他	既	自信	又	很尊重别 人的意见。
这个人	既	没幽默感	又	很小气。

#### Now check the correct statements.

- 1 既 ······又 ····· is a conjunctive used to connect two parallel structures describing the subject/topic.
- 2 Only adjectives can appear after 既 and 又.
- □ 3 既······又····· is similar to 又······又······.

## ☑ Translate the sentences into Chinese with 既・ 又・・・・・・・

- 1 It is impossible to find a job which offers both stability and great excitement at the same time.
- 2 It is both safe and convenient to drive here.
- 3 I think teaching is a great job—dealing with little children is fun and constantly gives me a sense of achievement.
- 4 I don't understand why you are taking this job the pay is low and the work is exhausting!
- 5 If you are late for the interview, you will appear to be unprofessional and disrespectful.

Turn to page 196 for grammar reference.

## LESSON 3

## Communication activity

Work in pairs. Read the description of two job offers and list their pros and cons.

工作A

电视台英文专栏编辑、记者。工资收入头两 年不太高,但是以后会增加得很快。工作时 间大概为每周35到45小时。专栏的内容可以 自己决定,需要采访中国人或者在中国的外 国人。

#### 工作B

咨询公司(consulting firm)顾问(consultant)。工 资收入很高。需要常常出差。工作时间每周 至少60小时。工作内容是跟各种各样的公司 客户(client) 打交道,提供咨询服务。

Now make a choice.

Work with another pair with a different choice. Talk about your choice and explain your reasons.



Turn to pages 177 and 183 for more speaking practice.

## Review and practice

- Complete the sentences with the correct words.
  - 1 能把中文学好,让我很有\_\_\_\_。
    - a 幽默感
- b 成就感 c 新鲜感
  - 2 我把跟他见面的日期 了。
    - a 提前
- b提出
- c 提高
- 3 我还没有什么值得 的成就。
  - a 骄傲
- b自信
- c 得意
- 4 内蒙古草原的美丽, 你要自己去\_\_\_。
  - a 经过
- b 经验
- c体验
- 5 毕业以后\_\_\_\_三年我打算去农村工作。
  - a 头
- b初
- c开始
- 6 我刚来的时候,对纽约的 并不好。

  - a 印象 b 影响
- c影象
- 7 一王玉喜欢不喜欢史蒂夫?
  - 一这\_\_\_\_。
  - a 不好说 b 看着办 c 不知道

- 8 她很害羞, 跟人说话时眼睛常常看着地 上, \_\_\_\_\_很没有礼貌。
  - a 好像 b 显得
- c看来

## Cultural corner

## Chinese ways of expressing feelings

Traditionally, Chinese ways of expressing feelings are less direct or open than in the West. Nowadays you can see young people kiss and hug in public, but generally speaking Chinese people are only intimate and informal among long-standing friends. Straightforward answers and very explicit responses are rare, especially when questions concerning feelings and emotions are involved. Rather than refuse a request unambiguously, it's more likely that a Chinese person will change the subject of

conversation. A smile might conceal not humour but embarrassment—or sometimes even anger. And needless to say, losing your temper is quite unacceptable in most situations.

However, this doesn't mean that Chinese people are cold and unfriendly. On the contrary, they can be very warm and caring, and will do their utmost to make guests feel comfortable and at home. Many Westerners who have spent time in China often say that the friendships they've made will last a lifetime.

#### Complete the passage with the correct words.

显得	表示	尊重	无论
欠	影响	提出	往往
按照	新鲜	平等	小气

AA 制在中国是个比较 \_\_\_\_\_ 的事物。 就拿跟朋友吃饭来说, \_\_\_\_\_ 传统习惯, 吃饭的人都应该抢着付钱, \_\_\_\_ 一下客气, 还有对别人的 \_\_\_\_。 当然, 如果是朋友之间吃饭, 这次你请我, 下次就该我请你了。

现在 AA 制在中国越来越流行,特别是受到西方文化 \_\_\_\_\_ 的年轻人。 \_\_\_\_\_ 是跟熟悉还是刚认识的朋友出去吃饭、或者唱卡拉 OK,实行 AA 制都很方便,大家谁也不 \_\_\_\_\_ 谁的。

不过,约会就是另外一回事了。虽然有的 女孩子不在乎付钱,认为男女应该\_\_\_\_,可是 如果男方主动\_\_\_\_\_AA制,\_\_\_\_\_会给人留下一 个很\_\_\_\_\_的印象,\_\_\_\_\_既不浪漫,又没有热 情。当然,如果女方主动付一部分钱,感觉就 不一样了。



#### I Translate the sentences into Chinese.

- 1 How can you not like the Christmas atmosphere?
- 2 She insisted on paying her share of the bill.
- 3 Many people believe that a family-oriented man is usually very reliable.
- 4 I really envy her! I wish I could travel around the world just like her!
- 5 We should have coffee together some other day.
- 6 So you really want to stay single for your whole life? Won't you be lonely when you get older?
- 7 I reckon the flight will be delayed for at least three hours.
- 8 Business trips are both boring and lonely.

#### Read the following tips on communication skills and choose the five most useful ones.

- 1 说话的时候眼睛要看着对方。
- 2 注意倾听。
- 3 记住对方的名字。
- 4 避免过多谈论自己的事情。
- 5 要显得自信,但是不要太骄傲。
- 6 面带微笑。
- 7 尊重对方的意见。对不同的看法 要有开放的态度。
- 8 要表现出自己的特点。最好能给 别人留下很深的印象,不容易忘 记你。

Now write a brief summary of your opinion using real-life examples.

Write some advice for your Chinese friend who will soon go on his first date with a girl from your country. Describe some cultural differences.

## Vocabulary review

Fill in the blanks.

AAzhì āiyā bànlǔ bàng bìmiăn biăoxiàn	interj. n. adj.	oh (expressing surprise) spouse, life partner
bànlǔ bàng bìmiǎn biǎoxiàn	n.	surprise) spouse, life
bàng bìmiăn biăoxiàn		
bìmiăn biăoxiàn	adj.	
biǎoxiàn ~		fine, excellent, fantastic
	v.	avoid
02 02:3002 ()	n.	
búbì	adv.	no need
bùguăn	conj.	no matter, despite
bù hǎo shuō		
chéngjiù	n.	achievement
chūcì	n.	first time
dă jiāodào		deal with
dàfang	adj.	natural, tasteful, generous
dàochù	adv.	everywhere
dōngbēn-xīzŏu		bustle about
duìfāng	n.	the other party
fàngsōng	v.	
fèn	measure word	share
fù	V.	
găitiān	adv.	another day
gàn	v.	do, perform
- gèzhŏng-gèyànç	3	
gèzhŏng-gèyànç gūjì	) v.	estimate, reckon
		estimate, reckon care about one's family
gūjì	v.	care about one's
gūjì gùjiā	v. v.	care about one's family
gūji gùjiā guīdìng	v. v.	care about one's family rule
gūjì gùjiā guīdìng guòduō	v. v. n.	care about one's family rule too much
gūjì gùjiā guīdìng guòduō guòfèn	v. v. n. adj.	care about one's family rule too much over, going too far
gūjì gùjiā guīdìng guòduō guòfèn hé	v. v. n. adj. n.	care about one's family rule too much over, going too far box
gūjì gùjiā guīdìng guòduō guòfèn hé huàtí	v. v. n. adj. n. n.	care about one's family rule too much over, going too far box topic
gūjì gùjiā guīdìng guòduō guòfèn hé huàtí jìmò	v. v. n. adj. n. n.	care about one's family rule too much over, going too far box topic lonely
	chéngjiù chūcì dă jiāodào dàfang dàochù dōngbēn-xīzŏu duìfāng fàngsōng fèn fù găitiān gàn	chéngjiù n. chūcì n. då jiāodào dàfang adj. dàochù adv. dōngbēn-xīzŏu duìfāng n. fàngsōng v. fèn measure word fù v. găitiān adv.

	jiāo' ào	adj.	arrogant, proud
尽量	jĭnliàng	adv.	to one's best
举止	jůzhĭ	n.	manner
可靠	kěkào	adj.	
克服	kèfú	V.	overcome
	lĭxiǎng -	adj.	ideal
留	liú	v.	
-	nándào	adv.	(used to reinforce a rhetorical question)
平等	píngděng	adj.	equal
破产	pòchăn	v.	go broke
气氛	qìfēn	n.	atmosphere
欠	qiàn	v.	
巧克力	qiǎokèlì	n.	chocolate
倾听	qīngtīng	V.	listen attentively
谈论	tánlùn	v.	talk about
提出	tíchū	V.	propose, bring up
	tíqián	v.	advance, bring forward
体验	tĭyàn	v.	experience
头	tóu	adj.	first
稳定	wĕndìng	adj./v.	stable; stabilize
细节	xìjié	n.	detail
吓	xià	V.	scare
显得	xiănde	V.	look, seem
羡慕	xiànmù	V.	-
小气	xiǎoqi	adj.	cheap, miserly
	xīnxiāngǎn	n.	sense of novelty
炫耀	xuànyào	v.	show off
-	yěxů	adv.	perhaps
一辈子	yíbèizi	n.	all one's life
印象	yìnxiàng	n.	
幽默感	yōumògăn	<i>n</i> .	
约会	yuēhuì	n.	date
	zhŭnshí	adj.	punctual, on time
最好	zuìhǎo	adj.	best

### Review 3

## Vocabulary

TH MAINTA	+6	ords with	anch el	
- vvrite	three wo	oras witt	i each c	naracter

and the same			

#### Circle the odd words out.

1 邀请	获救	拥抱	支持
2 枯燥	浪漫	冷淡	折磨
3 避免	炫耀	羡慕	骄傲
4 受伤	获救	修炼	得病

## Put the words in the most appropriate categories.

5 厉害 优美 神奇

- a 膝盖 b 肘 c 优秀 d AA制

生命

- e内向 f可靠 g细节 h骄傲

- i 小气 j 礼物 k 大方 l 肩膀

- m 腰部 n 脚踝 o 巧克力 p 鲜花

q 吻 r 后背

身体	印象	约会

#### Complete the sentences with the correct word.

1 Bill Gates是一位非常	的企业家。
-------------------	-------

- a 成就
- b成功
- 2 为了这次考试我准备了很久,结果却 这么糟糕,让我觉得很\_\_\_\_。
  - a 难受 b 难道
- 3 这篇新闻报道 了政府对当地环 境问题的重视。

  - a 引起 b 造成
- 4 他一个人进山找不到路了。五天以 后,他才\_\_\_\_。
  - a 收获 b 获救
- 走路。
  - a 扶
- b 握

### Match the words with their opposite meanings.

1 热情

a 小气

- 2 大方
  - 3 提前
- b冷淡 c 直

4 执闹

d 推后

5 枯燥

e安静

6 弯

**f** 有趣

## Grammar

	omplete the sentences with the correct opressions.	老是 随便 早就 过分
1	我学的是现代汉语,所以古文。	尽量 尤其是
	a 看不懂 b 没看懂	1 我的室友 很晚睡觉,让我也休
2	经济不好, 所以去年他用了很长时间	息不好。
	才工作。	2 你想吃什么拿,不要客气。
	a 找得到 b 找到了	3 虽然外表很重要,可是注意外
3	骄傲的人不容易成功。	表就不太好了。
	a 往往 b 常常	4 去别人家做客,准时。不过晚
4	我上个月 从英国回来。	到一点也没关系。
	a 刚 <b>b</b> 刚才	5 我 会用电脑打中文了。
5	我的父母,还有很多亲戚都是医生, 我选择当演员。	6 市中心的交通总是很糟糕,在 节假日的时候。
	<b>a</b> 却 <b>b</b> 而	
6	如果送的礼物不合适,很贵,	Complete the dialogues with the words given.
		I A: 听说这门课考试特别多。
	a 就算也 b 无论都	B: 是啊,
7	他是个害羞的孩子,对他你得。	(光就)
	a 有一点热情 b 热情一点	2 A: 你打算什么时候去意大利旅游?
8	妈妈的规定,我最晚不能超过 十二点到家。	B:
	a 按照 b 关于	(等了,)

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

3 A: 你喜欢看什么电影?	
В:	_
(无论都)	
4 A: 你理想的男朋友/女朋友是什么 样的?	(
В:	
(像这样/那样)	
5 A: 你喜欢大城市的生活吗?	
B:	_
(既又)	
6 A: 自己开车去旅游多方便啊!	
B:	

- Rewrite the sentences using potential complements.
  - 1 这么多菜, 我没法自己吃完。

(……是……, 可是……)

- 2 他中文说得又慢又清楚,我可以听懂。
- 3 我眼睛不太好, 所以黑板上的字看得 不是很清楚。
- 4 这场比赛太受欢迎了, 我没办法买 到票。

5 我们这里的唐人街很小, 很容易找到 你要去的书店。

## Integrated skills



- Listen to the sentences and choose the appropriate response.
  - 1 a 没问题。
- b 什么时候?
- 2 a 我说不好。 b 我也不知道。
- 3 a 我能。
- b做得完。
- 4 a 对不起, 我忘了是多少钱买的。
  - b 对不起, 这是我的个人隐私。



- Listen and choose the best paraphrasing of each sentence.
  - 1 a 我的腿受伤了。
    - b我的腿很漂亮。
  - 2 a 在饭馆吃饭当然应该付小费。
    - b 我想知道在饭馆吃饭应该不应该付 小费。
  - 3 a 无论天气怎么样, 我都会去上课。
    - b 如果天气不糟糕,我就会去上课。
  - 4 a 她的衣服很好。
    - b 她买的衣服太贵了!

Work in pairs. Look at the photos. Take turns to describe your impression of the people using at least four sentences. Explain why you get the impression.



Read part of a letter from a girl and answer the questions.

我的烦恼是有一个不懂浪漫的男朋友。他是我一年前在外地出差的时候在飞机上认识的。跟他聊天的时候,我发现我们是同一个学校毕业的,现在又在同一个城市工作,就交换了电话号码。后来又常常约着一起吃饭,很快就成了男女朋友。他有一点内向、害羞,所以不太会说甜言蜜语,他也从来不主动给我买什么礼物。情人节的时候,他没有买花,也没有买巧克力,只是请我吃了pizza。看到我不太高兴,他就说浪漫没什么用,又不能当饭吃。另外,他还是个工作狂,所以总是我主动给他打电话,他还常常不接。

.....

- 1 他们是怎么认识,又是怎么变成男女朋友的?
- 2 "工作狂"是什么意思?"甜言蜜语" 又是什么意思?
- 3 她觉得他们的矛盾是什么?
- 4 你觉得他们最主要的问题是什么?
- Write a response to the letter in Activity 4 and offer your advice.

## **Enjoy Chinese**

Guess what these ancient Chinese characters resemble.

1 E目 a 刀

2 **克** b 立.

3 6 竹

4 **介** d 云

5 S e电

Now match the ancient characters with the modern ones.

## Pinyin pronunciation guide

Sound	Words	Example 1	Example 2
Initials	5		
b	bed	bō 玻	bēi 杯
р	pin	põ	pāi
	317700	坡 mō	拍 mái
m	moon	摸 fó	埋 fā
f	fun	佛	发
d	day	dé 得	dā 搭
t	tin	tè 特	tā 他
n	nose	ne 呢	nà 纳
1	long	lè 勒	lā 拉
g	good	gē	gāi
		哥 kē	该 kāi
k	kind	科 hē	开 hā
h	hat	喝	哈
j	jug	ji 基	jiāo 交
q		qī 欺	qià 恰
×		xī	xião
		希 zhī	消 zhā
zh	bridge	知 chī	渣 chá
ch	chin	吃	茶
sh	shirt	shī 诗	shā 沙
r	reduce	rì H	rén 人
Z	"ds" in reads	zī 资	zá 杂
С	"ts" in hats	cí 雌	cā 擦
S	say	sī	sè
	- Cy	思	色
Finals	-	ā	bā
a	far	Wō Wō	mò
0	Saw	喔	墨
е	her	é 鹅	chē 车
i	bee	yī 衣	bǐ 比
u	rude	wū <u>Ġ</u>	wū 屋
ü	German Fühlen	yū 迁	nǔ 女
ai	eye	āi 哀	bái 白
ei	eight	ēi 欸	féi 肥
ao	cow	άο	bão
		敖 ōu	包 pōu
ou	oh	欧	剖 bān
an	enhance	安	班
en	taken	ēn 思	běn 本

ang	gang	áng	bāng ±i/
ung	gung	昂	邦
eng	sung	hēng 字	bēng 崩
	,9,5,1,3		
ong	German Lunge	hōng 轰	dōng 东
-			xià
ia	yard	ya 呀	夏
			友 bié
ie	yes	yē 耶	别
		Vão	jiāo ·
iao	meow	腰	交
21		yōu	diū
iu	yoga	优	丢
Civi		yān	piān
ian	yen	烟	偏
		vin	bin
in	in	因	宾
		yāng	niáng
iang	e + yang	央	娘
		yīng	bing
ing	sing	英	丙
		yōng	qióng
iong	German Jünger	雍	穷
	10000000	wā	guā
ua	guano	蛙	瓜
The second		wō	duō
uo	wall	窝	多
		wāi	guài
uai	why	歪	怪
- 24		wēi	wéi
uei		威	围
		wān	duăn
uan	wan	弯	短
		wēn	kūn
un	· won	温	昆
NAME OF STREET		wāng	guāng
uang	u + ongoing	汪	光
		wēng	wèng
ueng		翁	瓮
no.	B. Lak	yuē	quē
üe	ü + eh	约	缺
line	D t-on	yuān	xuān
üan	ü + an	冤	宣
n	Cormon auth	yūn	qún
ün	German grün	晕	群

# Combinations of pinyin initials and simple finals

simple finals Initials	0	0	0	0	0	0
b	ba	bo		bi	bu	
р	pa	ро		pi	pu	
m	ma	mo	me	mi	mu	
f	fa	fo			fu	
d	da		de	di	du	
t	ta		te	ti	tu	
n	na		ne	ni	nu	nü
1	la		le	li	lu	lü
g	ga		ge		gu	
k	ka		ke		ku	
h	ha		he		hu	
j				ji		jü (ju)
q				qi		qü (qu)
X				xi		xü (xu)

### Pair work activities for Student A

### Unit 1

- You are an educational consultant. An international school in China wants to hire a curriculum officer for their new elective courses on Chinese language and culture. You are one of several candidates for the post. Prepare a list of possible elective courses/ after-school programmes with short descriptions.
- Role-play the interview with Student B, who is the school principal.

### Unit 2

- You are a hotel concierge. A guest wants to use the following facilities but does not know how to find them.
  - · business centre
  - · hotel shop
  - · theatre

Now explain to the guest how to get these places. Use the floor plan to help you.

- Change roles with Student B. You are the hotel guest. Ask the hotel concierge how to find the following facilities:
  - swimming pool
  - restaurant
  - gym







▲ 您在这里



Your teacher talked about the Chinese final exam in class, but you missed some information. Talk to Student B to get all the details you need.

#### This is what you know about the test:

- · the date of the test is 23 Dec;
- you will not take the test in your usual classroom,
   you will take the test in the room right next to your
   Chinese teacher's office;
- there are four types of test questions. One of them will be multiple choice.

#### Find out:

- · the exact time of the test;
- · other types of test questions;
- · what will be covered in the test.

## Unit 4

- A Chinese newspaper is calling for nominations from around the world for the most inspiring person of the year. Think of two people from your country as your nominations.
- Discuss your nominations with Student B and explain why you think they are the most inspiring people of the year.
- Together with Student B, decide on one person to nominate.



You are an airline agent. Student B is a customer who wants to book a flight from Hong Kong to Beijing. Flights details are:

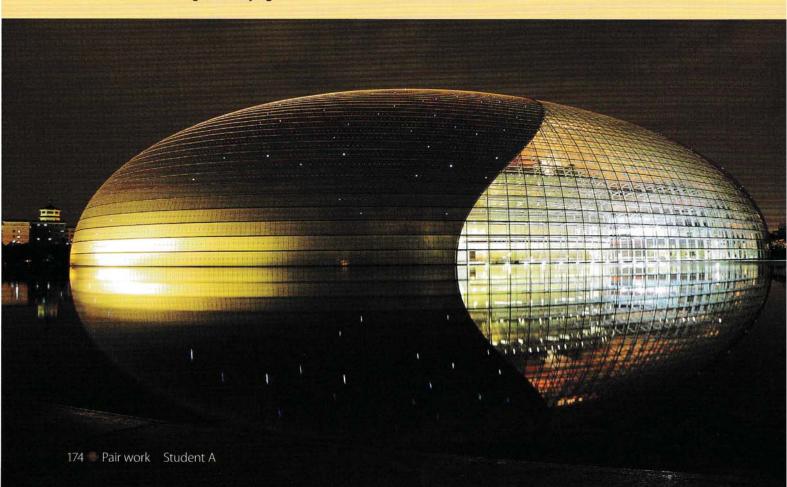
航空 公司	票价	航班情况
A	RMB 1070 起	每天都有,只有早上9 点的一个航班
В	RMB 1400 起	每周一、三、五有航班, 上午10点和下午5点两班
С	RMB 1930 起	每周二、四、六有航班, 周二和周四的在上午9 点,周六的在下午3点
С	RMB 2300 起	每天都有,时间为 8 点, 10 点,14 点和 18 点

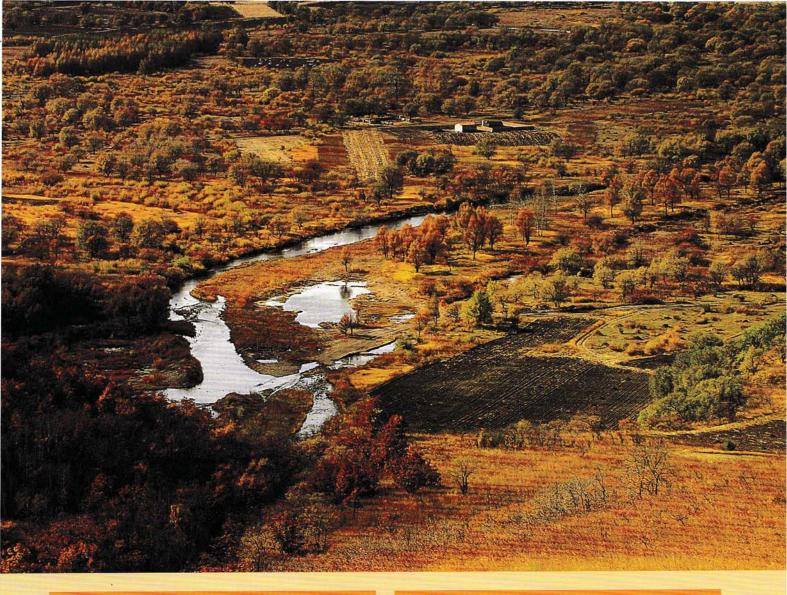
Work with Student B, your customer, and help them find a suitable flight to Beijing.

## Unit 6

Work with Student B. Look at the picture and ask Student B questions to find out the differences from their picture.







- 1 You are going to do a survey. You will interview Student B about his/her ideal life ten years from now. Prepare a list of questions you'd like to ask. For example:
  - · where do they want to live?
  - · what kind of style life do they want to lead?
  - what kind of job do they want to do?
- Ask Student B your questions.
- Change roles with Student B.

## Unit 8

- You are the chief ranger of a wildlife park or nature reserve in your country. Think about:
  - how big the park is;
  - · how many visitors the park has every year;
  - · what wildlife there is;
  - · what environmental dangers there are;
  - if there's a balance between looking after the environment and attracting tourists to visit;
  - · what plans you have for the future.
- 2 Student B is a journalist with an interest in environmental projects. Act out an interview with them.

- Prepare a description of the storylines of five famous films.
- Work with Student B. Student B has five chances to guess the name of the film. Say the genre (eg. 动 画片) but do not say the name of the film. Start to describe the storyline.
  - If Student B correctly guesses the name of the film, they get five points. If not, continue the description.
  - If they now guess the name of the movie correctly, they get four points. Continue in this way, with one fewer point for each wrong guess, until they have guessed correctly or used all their five guesses.
- Listen to Student B's description and guess the name of the film. You also have five chances.
- Start describing your second film.
- Continue until you have both finished describing the storylines of your five famous films. How many points did you score?

### Unit 10

- You are a sports person but you have injured yourself. Choose a sport you enjoy and think of a typical injury in that sport.
- Student B is a sports coach who knows about sports injuries. Explain what your injury is, and ask for advice on how you can recover. Explain that you have an important game next week, and you need to be fit.

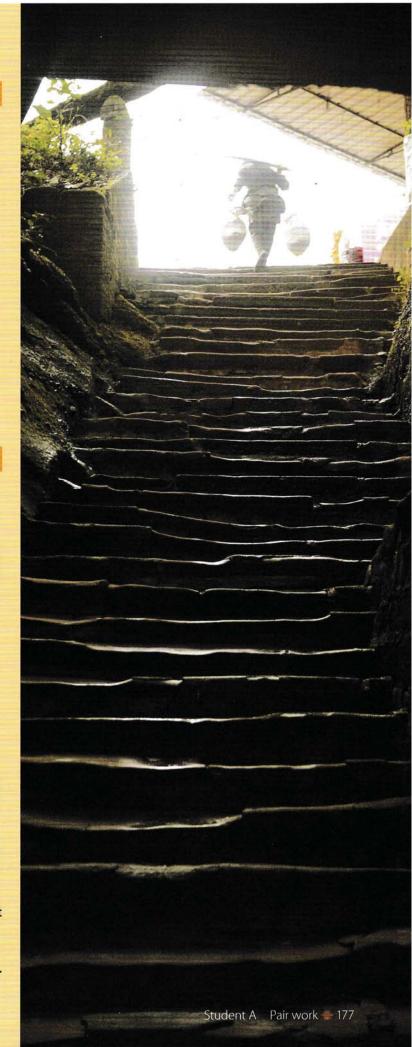
- You volunteer as a peer counsellor or in your school. Student B will come to you seeking advice/ opinions about two issues they may have. One is about academic study, and another is about relationships with family/friends.
- Listen to Student B carefully, take notes, and give some general suggestions.

### Unit 12

- Work with Student B and look at the statements below.
  - 1 第一份工作,赚钱多少是最重要的。
  - 2 理想的伴侣,最重要的是有共同的兴趣爱好。
  - 3 初次约会的时候应该 AA 制。
  - 4 选择专业的时候,父母的意见最重要。
  - 5 真正自信的人不喜欢谈论自己的成就。
  - 6 第一次见面,应该多听、少说,这样 显得尊重别人。
  - 7 对孩子影响最大的人是父母。
  - 8 在学校成绩最好的学生不一定是将来 最有成就的。

Which statements do you agree with? Does Student B agree with you?

Hold a debate on the topics you do not agree upon.



### Pair work activities for Student B

## Unit 1

You are the principal of an international school in China. You are looking for an educational consultant for the new elective courses on Chinese language and culture. There are several candidates for the post.

Prepare a list of questions to ask the candidates.

Role-play the interview with Student A, who is one of the candidates.

## Unit 2

- You are a guest at a hotel. You would like to find out where the following facilities are:
  - business centre
  - hotel shop
  - theatre
- Change roles with Student A. You are the hotel concierge. Explain to the hotel guest where they can find the following facilities:
  - swimming pool
  - restaurant
  - gym





▲ 您在这里

Your teacher talked about the Chinese Final in class, but you missed some information. Talk to Student A to get all the details you need.

### This is what you know about the test:

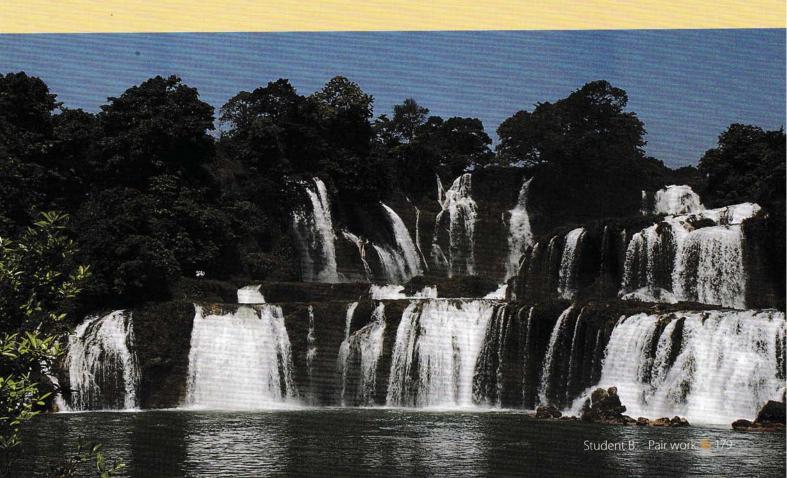
- the time of the test will be from 9 am to 12 pm;
- the test will cover all vocabulary and grammar from Lesson 1 to Lesson 7;
- there are four types of test questions, and you know three of them: matching, short answers to questions and short essays.

#### Find out:

- · the date of the test;
- · the location of the test;
- one type of test question that you do not know.

### Unit 4

- A Chinese newspaper is calling for nominations from around the world for the most inspiring person of the year. Think of two people from your country as your nominations.
- Discuss your nominations with Student B and explain why you think they are the most inspiring people of the year.
- Together with Student B, decide on one person to nominate.



You want book a flight from Hong Kong to Beijing. Here is your ideal travel plan:

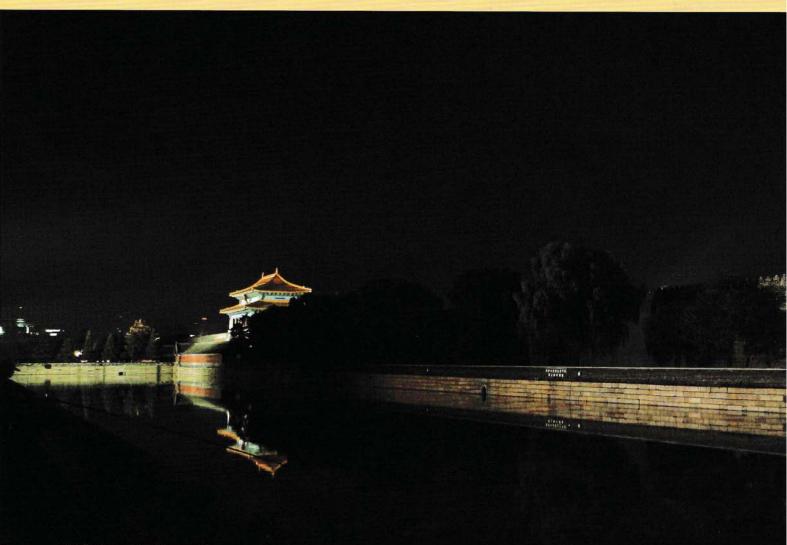
- 对航空公司没有特别要求
- 希望是周末的航班
- 因为不喜欢早起, 所以最好航班不要早于上午 10点; 但也不要晚于晚上 8点。
- 票价越低越好,但如果时间合适,价格 高一点也没有关系。

Work with Student A, the travel agent, and find a suitable flight to Beijing. You may have to change your travel plan.

### Unit 6

Work with Student A. Look at the picture and ask Student A questions to find out the differences from their picture.

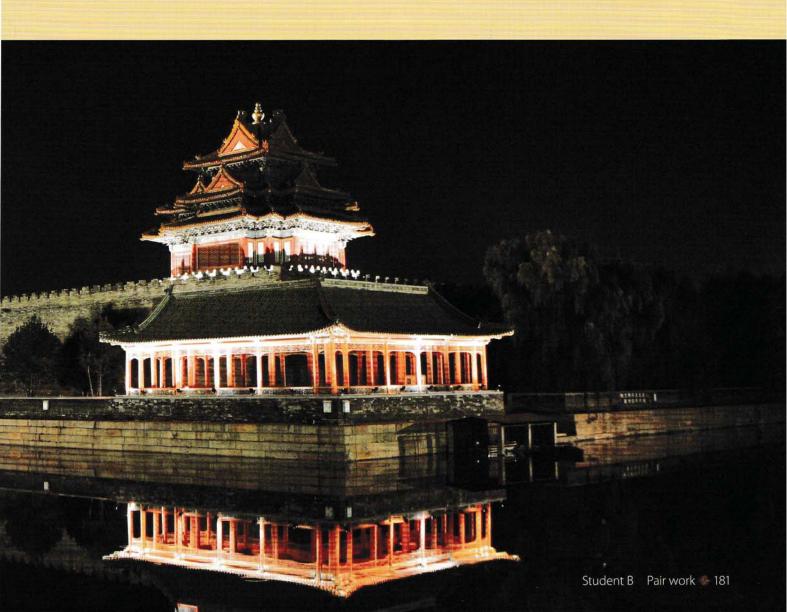


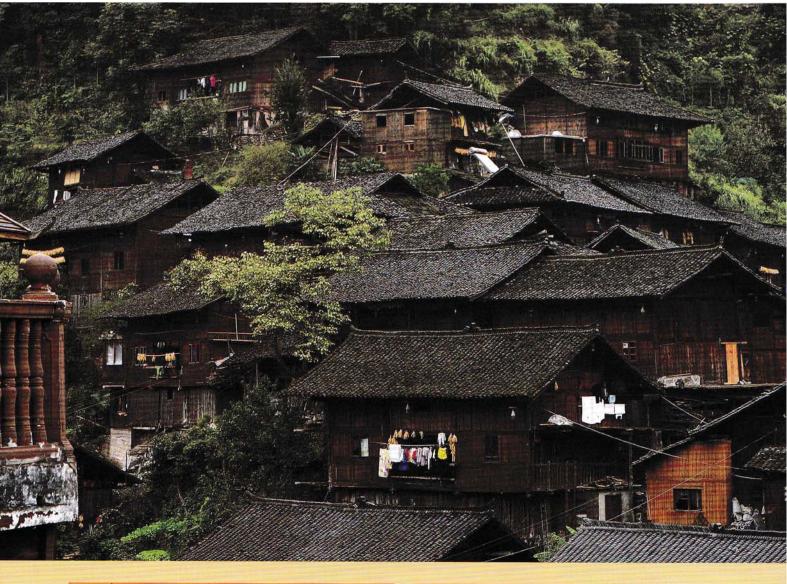


- Think about your ideal life in ten years from now. Decide:
  - · where you want to live
  - · what kind of lifestyle you want to lead
  - · what kind of job you want to do
- 2 Student A is doing a survey. Answer their questions.
- Change roles with Student A.

### Unit 8

- You are a journalist with an interest in environmental projects. You are going to interview Student A, who is the chief ranger of a wildlife park or nature reserve in his/her country. Prepare some questions about:
  - · how big the park is;
  - · how many visitors the park has every year;
  - · what wildlife there is;
  - · what environmental dangers there are;
  - if there's a balance between looking after the environment and attracting tourists to visit;
  - · what plans he/she has for the future.
- 2 Act out an interview with Student A.





- Prepare a description of the storylines of five famous films.
- Work with Student A. Listen to Student A's description and guess the name of the film. You have five chances to guess correctly.
  - If you guess correctly, you get five points. If not, keep listering to Student A's description.
  - If you now guess correctly, you get four points. If not, continue until you have guessed correctly or used all your five guesses.
- El Start describing your first film.
- Continue until you have both finished describing the storylines of your five famous film. How many points did you score?

### Unit 10

- You are a sports coach and you know about sports injuries. Think of some well-known sports and make a list of the injuries that can happen. Think about the advice you can give.
- Student A is a sportsperson with a sports injury. Find out what the injury is and give advice on how they can recover.

- Think of two issues you may have. One is about academic study, one is about relationships with family/friends.
- Talk to Student A, the peer counsellor, about your issues and seek advice/opinions. Student A will listen to you carefully, take notes and give some general suggestions.

### Unit 12

- Work with Student A and look at the statements below.
  - 1 第一份工作,赚钱多少是最重要的。
  - 2 理想的伴侣,最重要的是有共同的兴趣 爱好。
  - 3 初次约会的时候应该 AA 制。
  - 4 选择专业的时候,父母的意见最重要。
  - 5 真正自信的人不喜欢谈论自己的成就。
  - 6 第一次见面,应该多听、少说,这样显得 尊重别人。
  - 7 对孩子影响最大的人是父母。
  - 8 在学校成绩最好的学生不一定是将来最有 成就的。

Which statements do you agree with? Does Student A agree with you?

Hold a debate on the topics you do not agree upon.



### **Grammar reference**

### Unit 1

#### Talking about results using resultative complements

The resultative complement is a construction that is unique to Chinese grammar. A resultative complement is an adjective or another verb that can be used with the main verb, indicating the result of the action. Appearing after verbs and before objects, resultative complements usually carry meaning themselves. For example, "完" indicates an action is finished; "到" means successful achievement. Due to its nature, the resultative complement often appears with "了", which also indicates the completion of the action.

Otl	her	Subject	Verb	Resultative complement	Other
Gōng 功i		nǐ 你	xiě 写	wán 完	le ma 了吗?
		wŏ 我	ting 听	míngbai 明白	le tāde 了他的 yìsi 意思。
		wŏ néng 我能	kàn 看	dŏng 懂	Zhōngwén 中文 bào le 报了!
Wǎnfe			zuò 做	hǎo 好	le ma 了吗?
		Ānnà 安娜	mǎi 买	dào 到	le tā yào de 了她要的 zìdiǎn ma 字典吗?

### Talking about the future using 会 / 将

Both 会 and 将 are auxiliary verbs indicating what will happen in the future. Naturally, they are often used with time expressions referring to the future. However, 将 is more formal than 会, and is often used in formal speaking and writing.

Other	Subject	huì jiāng 会/将	Verb phrase
	Měi guó zǒngtǒng	jiāng	fǎngwèn Rìběn
	美国 总 统	将	访问日本。

Other	Subject	huì jiāng 会/将	Verb phrase
	Bǐsài de dì 比赛的第 yī míng 一名	jiāng 将	huòdé yíwàn 获得一万 yuán jiǎngjīn 元 奖金。
	Běn lǚxíngshè 本旅行社	jiāng 将	wèi nín tígōng zuì 为您提供最 yōu de fúwù 优的服务。
Míngtiān 明天	Běi jīng 北京	huì 会	xiàyǔ 下丽。
Xià gè xuéqī 下个学期	wŏ 我	huì 会	jìxù xué shūfǎ 继续学书法。
Yàoshi nǐ 要是你 bú qù 不去,	tō 他	huì 会	hěn shēngqì 很 生气。

### Giving extra information using 再说/而且

再说 and 而且 are conjunctives used to connect two sentences. 再说 means "moreover", "in addition"; 而且 means "what is more", "but also". 再说 and 而且 are used to supply additional information by the speaker, who wants to make a stronger point, or to convince another to do something.

Context	Clause 1	Conjunctive	Clause 2
Zhè jiàn shì nǐ 这件事你 这件事你 yīnggāi gēn fù 应该跟父 mǔ shāngliang 母商量 shāngliang 商量,	bidoshì nǐ 表示 你 duì tāmen de 对 他们 的 zūnzhòng 尊 重 。		tāmen yě 他们也 xǔ néng gěi 许能给 nǐ hěn hǎo de 你很好的 jiànyì 建议。
Wǎnshang wǒmen 晚上我们 qù kàn zhīzhu 去看《蜘蛛 rén ba 人》吧。	反正你 míngtiān méi 明天没 yǒu kè	érqiě 而且,	tīngshuō zhè 听说这 bù diànyǐng 部电影 hěn bàng 很棒!
zhù qīngnián lǚ 住青年旅 guǎn ba	Pǔtōng de bīn 普通的宾 guǎn dōu tài 馆都太 guì le 贵了。		zhù qīngnián lǚ 住青年旅 guǎn zǒng néng 馆总能 rènshi hǎowán 认识好玩 de rén 的人。

Context	Clause 1	Conjunctive	Clause 2
Shǔjià zuìhǎo 暑假最好 néng qù yí gè 能去一个 gōngsī shíxí 公司实习。	Búdàn kě 不但可 yǐ dédào yì 以得到一 xiē gōngzuò 些工作 jīngyàn 经验,	érqiě 而且	shuōbudìng 说不定 hái néng rèn 还能认 shi hěn zhòng 识很重 yào de rén 要的人。

			haishi	ba
Expressing	preference	using	还是	吧

还是……吧 is an auxiliary verb construction that is used to express the speaker's preferred choice or suggestion in conversations. The subjects appearing before 还是 are first- or second-person pronouns. 吧 is placed at the end of the sentence to soften the tone, making it more suggestive and less imposing.

Other	Subject	háishi 还是	Verb phrase	ba 肥
wǒ jiànyì 我建议	你	háishi 还是	qù Běijīng xué 去北京学 Zhōngwén 中文	ba 吧。
Zhè ge xuéqī 这个学期	wŏ 我	háishi 还是	xuǎn shūfǎ kè 选 书法课	ba 肥。
Jìrán dōu xǐ 既然都喜 huan chī làde 欢吃辣的,	nimen 你们	háishi 还是	chī Sìchuāncài 吃四川菜	ba III.
Qù Guìlín lǚyóu 去桂林旅游,	wŏmen 我们	háishi 还是	zuò huǒchē 坐 火车	ba III.。

### Unit 2

	dui	iai shuo
Limiting the range of statements using	对…	…来说

The adverbial construction 对……来说 is always placed at the sentence-initial position to modify the statement that follows. To be more specific, it indicates that the following statement is true from a certain perspective or from a certain point of view. Using this construction can help the speaker not sound too absolute or too judgmental.

duì 对	Someone	lái shuō 来说,	Clause
Duì 对	gāng xué Zhōngwén 刚学中文 de xuésheng 的学生		xiě hànzì hěn bù róngyì 写汉字很不容易。
Dui 对		lái shuō 来说,	xìngqù shì zuihǎo de 兴趣是最好的 lǎoshī 老师。
- 911	Mǎkè 马克	lái shuō 来说,	Chéngdū shì zuì hǎowán 成都是最好玩 de difang 的地方。
Duì 对	Ānnà 安娜	lái shuō 来说,	zhōngguó lìshǐ fēicháng 中国历史非常 yǒu yìsi 有意思。

### **Emphasizing facts and negating assumptions using**

bú shì ér shì 不是······而是······

This structure is used to emphasize a fact by negating an assumption first. The emphasis is placed on 而是.

Topic	bú shì 不是 ······	ér shì 而是 ······	
zhǎo gōngzuò wǒ 找 工作,我 zuì zhòngshì de 最 重视的	不是工资 dàiyù	ér shì fāzhǎn de kōng 而是发展的空 jiān 间。	
wŏ bù xǐhuan zhè	bú shì yīnwèi tā	ér shì tā bù zūnzhòng	
我不喜欢这	不是因为她	而是她不尊重	
gè lǎoshī	tài yángé le	xuésheng de xiǎngfǎ	
个老师,	太严格了,	学生的想法。	
Yǒngmín shǔjià qù	bú shì wèile xué	ér shì wèile tǐyàn	
永民暑假去	不是为了学	而是为了体验	
Yīngguó	Yīngwén	Yīngguó wénhuà	
英国,	英文,	英国文化。	
Sòng lǐwù zuì	bú shì lĩwù guì	ér shì lǐwù dàibiǎo	
送礼物最	不是礼物贵	而是礼物代表	
zhòngyào de	bú guì	de xīnyì	
重要的	不贵,	的心意。	

#### mei xiangdac

### Expressing surprise using 没想到

As a negative form of resultative complement construction, 没+verb+complement, 没想到 literally means "did not expect". It can also be used as a sentence-initial adverb, expressing the speaker's surprise over the matter in the following statement.

As a verb+resultative complement construction:

Subject	méi xiǎngdào 没想到	Statement
Dì-yī-cì lái 第一次来 Běijīng Yǒngmín 北京,永民	méi xiǎngdào 没想到	Běijīng jīchǎng nàme 北京 机场 那么 xiàndàihuà 现代化!
tā 他	méi xiǎngdào 没想到	Niǔ yuē yǒu zhème duō 纽约有这么多 yìshùjiā 艺术家!
Wáng yù 王玉		Xīnxīlán rén zhème shǎo 新西兰人这么少!

#### As a sentence-initial adverb:

méi xiǎngdào 没想到	Statement
Méi xiǎngdào	dàxué gōngkè zhème jǐnzhōng
没想到	大学 功课 这么 紧张!
Méi xiǎngdào	wǒ de sùshè yòu xiáo yòu jiù
没想到	我的宿舍又小又旧!
Méi xiǎngdào	nǐ yě lái le
没想到	你也来了!

### Making commendations using 给·····推荐

Unlike in English, where prepositions usually appear after verbs, prepositions followed by a noun (somebody) always appear before verbs in Chinese. When expressing recommend something to someone in Chinese, one needs to say 给+someone+推荐+something.

Subject	Prepositional phrase		Verb	Object
	gěi 给 Sor	neone	tuījiàn 推荐	Something
wŏde tóngxué 我的同学	gěi wǒ 给我		tuījiàn le 推荐了	zhè ge shūdiàn 这个书店。
Wáng lǎoshī 王 老师,	gěi wǒn 给 我		tuījiàn 推荐	yì běn zhōng-yīng 一本 中英 zì diǎn hǎo ma 字典 好吗?
Diànyuán 店员	gěi wǒ 给我		tuijiàn le 推荐了	zhè zhǒng shǒujī 这种手机。

### Unit 3

### shénme dōu Expressing "any" using 什么······都······

When combined with 都, the question word 什么 changes its meaning to "whatever". The construction 什么……都…… is used to express how the action is applied to anything in one general category. Usually the main verb appears after 都, while the general category appears after 什么.

Subject	shénme 什么	Noun phrase	dōu 都	Verb phrase
zài Niǔyuē wǒ 在纽约,我		fànguǎn 饭馆	dōu 都	hěn shúxi 很熟悉。
Yǒngmín 永民		wàiguó cài 外国菜		ài chī 爱吃。
Wŏde hǎo 我的好 péngyou 朋友		yùndòng 运动	dōu 都	xǐhuan 喜欢。
Zài tāde lǎo 在他的老 jiā tā 家,他	shénme 什么			rènshi 认识。

### Making suggestions using 不如······怎么样 / 吧

This structure is always used with suggestions, adding a persuasive tone. 不如 is placed at the beginning of the suggestion, while 怎么样 or 吧 is placed at the end of the suggestion. Very often, additional reasons/conditions are given to make the suggestion more persuasive.

Other	bùrú 不如	Suggestion	zěnmeyàng ba 怎么样/吧
Jīntiān tiānqì 今天天气 tài zāogāo le 太糟糕了,	bùrú 不如	wŏmen míngtiān 我们 明天 zài chūqu chīfàn 再出去吃饭	zěnmeyàng 怎么样?
Jiàqī tài duǎn 假期太短,	bùrú 不如	wǒmen dāizài xué 我们呆在学 xiào fùxí gōngkè 校复习功课	zěnmeyàng 怎么样?
Shāngwù xiězuò 商务写作 hěn wúliáo 很无聊,	bùrú 不如		ba III.

Other	bùrú 不如	Suggestion	zěnmeyàng ba 怎么样/吧
ōuzhōu jīngjì 欧洲 经济 bù hǎo nǐ yòu 不好,你又 dŏng zhōngwén 懂中文,	bùrú 不如	qù Zhōngguó zhǎo 去中国找 gōngzuò 工作	ba 吧。

### Expressing formality through vocabulary

The vocabulary used in formal Chinese (both in speaking and in writing) can be very different from that used in colloquial Chinese. Very often, formal vocabulary is derived from classical Chinese. It is important to study formal Chinese vocabulary and recognize the formal/ informal register of the language being used if the learner wants to go beyond the level of basic daily life conversation. See the following examples:

Formal	Less formal
jiāng	huì
将	会
nín guìxìng	nǐ xìng shénme
您贵姓	你姓什么
yú	zài
于	在
bìng	érqiě
并	而且
jiāng	bǎ
将	把

### Stating a rationale using 根据

Meaning "according to" or "based on", the preposition 根 据 is used to state the subject's rationale/base for certain actions. Like most prepositional phrases in Chinese, 根 据 always appears before the main verb of the sentence.

Subject	Prepositional phrase			
	gēnjù 根据	Noun phrase	Verb phrase	
Ānnà 安娜	gēnjù 根据	zìjǐ de àihào 自己 的 爱好	xuǎnzé zhíyè 选择 职业。	

Subject	Prepo	ositional phrase	
	gēnjù 根据	Noun phrase	Verb phrase
wŏ xǐhuan 我喜欢	gēnjù 根据	jìhuàhǎo de 计划好的 chéngxù 程序	zuòshì 做事。
Qù Nibóễr tú 去尼泊尔徒 bù nǐ zuìhǎo 步, 你最好	gēnjù 根据	dāngdìrén de 当地人的 jiànyì 建议	xuǎnzé lùxiàn 选择路线。
Lǚxíngshè 旅行社	gēnjù 根据	dāngtiān de 当天的 tiāngi 天气	ānpái cānguān 安排 参观 huódòng 活 动 。

### Unit 4

### Expressing "even" using 甚至

The conjunctive 甚至 is used to introduce an unlikely example or a less common situation, in order to emphasize the speaker's main point. Very often, more common examples are given and then followed by the 甚至 structure.

Other	A, B, C	shènzhì 甚至	X
Wángmíng hěn xǐ 王明很喜 huankànshū tā 欢看书,他		shènzhì 甚至	shàng cèsuǒ de shí 上 厕所的时 houdōuzài kànshū 候都在看书。
我的宿 shè tiáojiàn fēi	yǒu kōngtiáo 有空调、 bīngxiāng xǐ 冰箱、洗 yījī 衣机		háiyǒu xǐwǎnjī 还有 洗碗机。
Tā shì gè qióng 他是个穷 xuésheng 学生,	fùbùqǐ xué fèi 付不起 学费 hé shūfèi 和 书费,		lián chīfàn de qián 连吃饭的钱 dōu bú gòu 都不够。
zài wǎngshàng 在网上, wǒmen kěyǐ 我们可以	mǎi dōngxi 买东西、 kàn xīnwén 看新闻、 zhǎo gōngzuò 找 工作,		zhǎo dùixiàng 找 <sub>,</sub> 对象 。

#### zhide

### Expressing "be worth" using 值得

There are two usages for 值得. Used as an adjective, 值(得) means "worthy of". 值得 can also be combined with a verb, meaning something is worth doing.

topic	zhídé 值得	Verb
nàli de biǎoyǎn fēicháng 那里的表演非常 bàng piàojià zài guì 棒!票价再贵	yě zhídé 也值得。	
Shāngwù cāng fēicháng shū 商务舱 非常舒 fu suīrán bǐ jīngjì cāng 服,虽然比经济舱 guì duō le kěshì wǒ jué de 贵多了,可是我觉得	hěn zhí dé 很值(得)。	
xī'ān de Bīngmǎyŏng 西安的兵马俑	tài zhídé 太值得	qù kànkan 去看看 le 了!
Zhè běn shū zhème yǒuyòng 这本书这么有用,	tài zhídé 太值得	huā shíjiān 花时间 qù dú le 去读了。

### Expressing purpose using 为了

The preposition 为了 is used to introduce the purpose of an action. "为了+purpose" usually appears before the main clause, while "是为了+purpose" appears after the main clause.

wèile 为了	Purpose	Main clause
Wèile 为了	zēngjiā gōngzuò jīngyàn 增加 工作经验,	tā shǔjià qù le fùqin 他暑假去了父亲 de gōngsī shíxí 的公司实习。
Wèile 为了	cijī jīngjì zēngzhǎng 刺激经济增长,	zhèngfǔ juédìng jīnnián 政府 决定 今年 jiǎnshuì 减税。
		shì wèile

Main clause	shì wèile 是为了	Purpose
Dàxué bìyè hòu tā qù Niǔyuē 大学毕业后他去纽约		zhǎo gōngzuò 找工作。
Shǔjià Kǎilín qù Běijīng 暑假凯琳去北京		xué Zhōngwén 学 中文 。

### Stating causes using 由于

由于 is used to introduce the cause of something. The clause/phrase introduced by 由于 should always appear before the clause that states the result.

yóuyú 由于	Cause	Main clause
Yóuyú 由于	tiāngì de yuányīn 天气的原因,	fēijī wǎndiǎn le 飞机晚点了。
Yóuyú 由于	yuánlái de zhuānyè hěn 原来的 专业 很 nán zhǎo gōngzuò 难找工作,	kǎo yánjiūshēng de shíhou tā 考研究生的时候他 juédìng huàn gè zhuānyè 决定换个专业。
The state of the s	rénkǒu tài duō 人口太多,	zhè ge chéngshì de jiāotōng 这个 城市 的 交 通 yìzhí shì gè dà wèntí 一直是个大问题。

### Unit 5

### Expressing influences using 受·····影响

Passive voice in Chinese is not always indicated by the most common 被 structure. For example, 受(到)······ 影响 is used to express "being influenced by". The source of the influence is always placed between 受(到) and 影响.

Subject	shòu dào 受(到)	Source	de yǐngxiǎng 的影响	Other
	Shòu 受	mǔqin 母亲	de yǐngxiǎng 的影响,	Annà cóng 安娜 从 xiǎo jiù xǐhuan 小就喜欢 kàn bālěi 看芭蕾。
Shìjiè gè 世界各 guó de 国的 diànyǐng 电影			fēicháng dà 非常 大 de yǐngxiǎng 的影响。	
Rìwén 日文	shòudào le 受到了		de yǐngxiǎng 的影响,	suǒyǐ yǒu hěn 所以有很 duō hànzì 多汉字。

Subject	shòu dào 受(到)	Source	de yǐngxiǎng 的影响	Other
	Shòu 受	táifēng 台风 tiānqì 天气	de yǐngxiǎng 的影响,	zhè ge xīngqī 这个星期 de yǔshuǐ fēi 的雨水非 cháng duō 常多。

### Noun phrases with 以

Meaning "from this point on", 以 is part of many useful prepositional expressions: 以前(before, ago), 以后 (after, later), 以上(above), 以下(under), 以外(except), 以内(within).

Shàng dàxué yǐgián wǒ méiyǒu chūquò guó 上 大学以前, 我没有出过国。

Chīfàn yǐhòu tā xǐhuan hē bēi chá 吃饭以后,他喜欢喝杯茶。

Èrniánjí yishàng de xuésheng dou kěyi xuǎn zhè mén kè 二年级 以上 的 学 生 都 可以 选 这 门 课。

Tā měitiān pǎobù yǐwài háiyào yóuyŏng huòzhě qí zìxíngchē 他每天跑步以外,还要游泳或者骑自行车。

### Expressing "unbearable" using 受不了

受不了literally means "cannot bear". One can use 受不了 as a stative verb, indicating something is unbearable. It is also used as a complement in the structure "Adj+得+受不了", meaning "it is so ... that one cannot bear it". Note that 受不了 is always used in a negative sense.

Jīntiān tiānqì tài rè le zhēn shòu bù liǎo 今天天气太热了,真受不了!

Wǒ shòu bù liǎo jīntiān de tiānqì yòu rè yòu shī 我 受不了今天的天气: 又热又湿!

Jīntiān tiānqì rè de shòu bù liǎo 今天天气热得受不了!

### Stating extreme consequences using 造 成

As a verb, 造成 is used to express "cause some severe results", or "make something bad happen". What appear after 造成 is usually a negative consequence.

Cause	zàochéng 造成	Negative effect
Rénkǒu tài duō 人口太多	zàochéng 造成	hěn duō shèhuì wèntí 很多社会问题。
Zhè ge dìqū jiàn le 这个地区建了 hěnduō gōngchǎng 很多工厂,		huánjìng de pòhuài . 环境的破坏。
Bú zhòngshì jiàoyù 不 重视 教育	zàochéng 造成	wénhuà hé jīngjì de 文化和经济的 luòhòu 落后。

### Unit 6

### Describing impressions using 好像

The adverb 好像 is used to modify the speaker's tone, expressing their impression of something or someone. Using 好像 can help to tone down a statement or description, making it less assertive. It can be placed either at the beginning of the sentence, or right after the topic.

Jīntiān tiāntiān hěn lěng hǎoxiàng yào xiàxuě le 今天 天气 很冷,好像要下雪了。

Tā hǎoxiàng míngtiān cái huílai 他好像明天才回来。

Zhōngguórén hǎoxiàng dōu xǐhuan hē chá 中国人好像都喜欢喝茶。

Hǎoxiàng wǒ tīngshuōguò zhè ge míngzi 好像 我听说过这个名字。

### Expressing causal relations using it

The verb it literally means "make...(happen)". The topic preceding it is usually a direct cause of the situation stated in the clause following it. The direct object of it is also the subject of the clause following it.

Topic	ràng 让	Clause
		tā àishàngle yīnyuè 他爱上了音乐。
Xué Zhōngwén 学 中文		wǒ rènshi le hěnduō Zhōngguó péngyou 我认识了很多 中 国 朋 友。
Wǎngluò de fāzhǎn 网络的发展		rénmen de shēnghuóyuèláiyuèfāngbiàn 人们的生活越来越方便。

### búshi jiùshi Expressing limited choices using 不是……就是……

The conjunctive 不是……就是…… is used to limit the choice between two options. What appear after 不是 and 就是 are two similar structures, which can be two verb phrases, two noun phrases, or two clauses.

Other	búshì 不是	Α	jiùshì 就是	В
zài fēijī 在飞机 shàng tā 上他		shuìjiào 睡觉	The state of the s	kàn diànyǐng 看电影。
Jīnnián shǔ 今年暑 jià wŏ 假我	búshì 不是	qù Zhōngguó xué 去中国学 Zhōngwén 中文,	jiùshì 就是	zhǎo gè gōng 找个公 sī shíxí 司实习。
Tā yào zhǎo 他要找 de rén 的人	búshì 不是		jiùshì 就是	

### Sentence-initial adverbs: 幸好,可惜,其实

Like 好像, many sentence-initial adverbs are used to modify the speaker's tone, indicating his/her feeling, attitude, emotion or opinion of the matter stated in the following clause. Usually there will be more contextual information revealing why the speaker feels that way.

Context	Adverb	Clause		
Zhè jiā fànguǎn bù shōu xìn 这家 饭馆 不 收 信 yòngkǎ 用卡。		wǒ dàile xiànjīn 我带了现金。		
Shàng gè xīngqī wǒ tèbié 上 个星期我特别 máng méi shíjiān fùxí 忙,没时间复习。	Xìnghǎo 幸好	zhè cì kǎoshì bú 这次考试不 tài nán 太难。		
Chuántǒng de jīngjù 传统的京剧 tèbié bàng 特别棒!	Kěxī 可惜	hěn duō rén tīng 很多人听 bù dǒng 不懂。		
Niǔyuē de qiūtiān 纽约的秋天 fēicháng měi 非常 美!	Kěxī 可惜	nǐ láide shíhou yǐ 你来的时候已 jing shì dōngtiān le 经是冬天了。		

Context	Adverb	Clause
Bié yǐwéi dàxué shēnghuó 别以为大学 生 活 hěn qīngsōng 很 轻 松,	qíshí 其实	xuéshengmen de yā 学生们 的压 lì fēicháng dà 力 非常 大。
Guòshēngri wǒ nánpéngyou gěi 过生日 我男朋友给 wǒ mǎi le yí gè dà dàngāo 我买了一个大蛋糕。	qíshí 其实,	wǒ yī diǎn yě bù 我一点也不 xǐhuan chī tiánde 喜欢吃甜的。

### Unit 7

### **Explicit comparisons**

gēn xiāng bǐ 跟 B(相)比, A······

bǐ duō le A比B……多了

bǐ yī diǎn yī xiē A比B······一点/一些

méiyǒu nàme A 没有 B 那么 ······

gēn méi yǒu chābié A跟B没/有·····差别

There are many ways to make explicit comparisons in Chinese other than the most basic structures "A比B+Adj" and "A跟B一样(好)". A brief summary of the structures is listed above. It should be noted that "跟B(相)比,A······" can be combined with other means of comparison.

Gēn Běijīng Shànghǎi xiāngbǐ wǒde jiāxiāng fēicháng pín 跟北京、上海相比,我的家乡非常贫

qióng luòhòu 穷、落后。

Gēn nǐmen xiāngbǐ tāmen de shēnghuó shuǐpíng gāo duō le 跟你们相比,他们的生活水平高多了。

Zhè zhǒng kāfēi bǐ nà zhǒng de wèidào kǔ duō le 这种咖啡比那种的味道苦多了。

Qù jīchǎng zuò chūzūchē bǐ zuò dìtiě guì duō le 去 机场 坐 出租车 比 坐 地铁 贵 多 了。

Xiānggǎng de dōngtiān méiyǒu Běijīng nàme lěng香港的冬天没有北京那么冷。

Niǔyuē jīchǎng méiyǒu Xīní jīchǎng nàme piàoliang 纽约 JFK 机场 没有 悉尼 机场 那么 漂亮 。

Běijīnghuà gēn Shànghǎihuà chābié hěn dà 北京话跟上海话差别很大。

Zhè liăng gè dìfang de shēnghuó shuǐpíng méi shénme chābié 这两个地方的生活水平没什么差别,

dõu hěn gão 都很高。

### Implicit comparisons using 更/比较

Unlike the explicit comparison, when the adverb 更 or 比 较 is used, comparison is often implicit and can be drawn from the context. 更and 比较 usually appear right before the adjectives or modal verbs such as 喜欢, 愿意, 能, etc.

Other	Subject	gèng bǐjiào 更/比较	Adjective/ · Modal verb
	Jīnnián xiàtiān 今年 夏天	bǐjiào 比较	rè 热。
Diànnǎo 电脑 shàngwǎng 上网 bú cuò 不错,	búguò wŏ 不过 我	gèng 更	xǐhuan yòng 喜欢 用 shǒujī 手机。
Shànghǎi fáng 上海房 jià hěn guì 价很贵,	Xiānggǎng de 香港的	gèng 更	guì 贵。
	Yǒngmín 永民	bǐjiào 比较	hàixiū 害羞。

#### Expressing something is contrary to expectation

### using 并不/并没有

Exclusively used in negation, the tonal adverb 并 不 / 并没有 is used to emphasize a situation that is contrary to the expectation of the speaker or the common assumption. It is often used together with 其 实, which has a similar function.

Assumption	Reality	
wǒ tīngshuō Zhōngguó dà A:我听说中国大 xuéshēng dōuhuì shuō yīngwén 学生都会说英文。	Hěn duō rén huì shuō yīng B: 很多人会说英 wén kěshì shuōde bìng bù 文,可是说得并不 hǎo 好。	

Assumption	Reality
Dàjiā dōu yǐwèi Yīngguó rén 大家都以为英国人 dōu hěn bǎoshǒu 都很保守,	qíshí yīngguórén bìng bù 其实 英国人 并 不 xiàng dàjiā rènwéi de nà 像 大家 认为 的 那 yàng bǎoshǒu 样 保 守。
Nǐ měi cì dōu kǎo yí A:你每次都考A,一 dìng fēicháng cōngmíng 定非常聪明。	Wǒ bìng bù cōngmíng B: 我并不聪明, zhīshì huā hěn duō shíjiān 只是花很多时间 xuéxí bà le 学习罢了。

### Drawing conclusions using 看来

看来 is placed at the sentence-initial position. Meaning "it seems that", 看来 is used when the speaker is drawing some conclusion based on his/her impression or contextual information. The context is not always explicit.

Context	kànlái 看来	Clause
wǒ zuì xǐhuàn de yǎn A: 我最喜欢的演 yuán shì Lǐ xiǎolóng 员是李小龙。	Kànlái B: 看来	nǐ hěn xǐhuan gōng 你很喜欢功 fu diànyǐng 夫电影。
shǐdìfū chángcháng A: 史蒂夫 常 常 gěi Wáng yù dǎ diànhuà 给 王 玉 打电话。	Kànlái B: 看来	tāmen guānxi hěn 他们关系很 búcuò 不错。
		Jīntiān yào xiàyǔ 今天要下雨。

### Unit 8

## Expressing sequences using 首 先 ······ 其次 ······

(最后……)

The conjunctive structure首先……其次……(最后) is used to express a sequence of concrete actions (similar to 先······再······) or to organize abstract reasoning/ thinking (similar to 第一······第二·····). It is more formal than 第一······第二······and 先······再······, so it often appears in formal speech or written language.

Wǒ mǎi dōngxi shǒuxiān kàn zhìliàng gíci shì kàn jiàgian 我买东西,首先看质量,其次是看价钱。 Bìyè yǐhòu wǒ dǎsuàn qù Běijīng Shǒuxiān Běijīng de 毕业以后我打算去北京。首先,北京的 gōngzuò jīhuì hěn duō Qícì wǒde jǐ gè hǎo péng 工作机会很多。其次,我的几个好朋 you dōu zài Běijīng Suǒyǐ bú huì gǎndào jìmò 友都在北京,所以不会感到寂寞。

Zài shāmò zhòng shù yǒu hěnduō hǎochu Shǒuxiān kěyǐ 在沙漠 种 树 有 很多 好处。首 先,可以gǎi shàn dāngdì de shēngtài huánjìng Qícì mùcái kěyǐ 改善当地的生态环境。其次,木材可以dàilái jīngjì shōurù 带来 经济收入。

#### yàobù zhéyàng ba Making suggestions using (要不)这样吧

The structure (要不)这样吧 is only used in conversations to bring up a suggestion. Very often the suggestion is about a solution to a problem.

Context	yàobù (要不) zhèyàng ba 这样吧	Suggestion		
Wǒ xiǎng qù mǎi A: 我想去买 dōngxi nǐ xiǎng hē 东西。你想喝 kōfēi 咖啡?	Yàobù zhè B: 要不 这 yàng ba 样 吧,	wǒ xiān péi 我先陪 nǐ qù mǎi dōngxi 你去买东西, ránhòu nǐ zài péi 然后你再陪 wǒ hē kāfēi 我喝咖啡。		
Nínhảo nín zhī A: 您好,您知dao cóng Běijīng huǒ 道从北京火 chēzhàn zěnme qù Tiān 车站怎么去天ānmén guǎngchǎng 安门广场?	Xiān zuò chē dào B: 先坐车到 ditiēzhàn zài 地铁站,再 zuò ditiē yào 坐地铁。要 bù zhèyàng ba 不这样吧,	zhènghǎo wǒ yě 正好我也 qù tiān'ānmén fù 去天安门附 jìn nǐ gēnzhe 近,你跟着 wǒ jiù xíng le 我就行了。		
Huáng lǎoshī wǒ A: 黄 老师,我 xià zhōuyi yǒu shì 下周一有事, bù néng lái shàngkè 不能来上课, gōngkè zěnme jiāogěi 功课怎么交给 nín ne 您呢?	Zhèyàng ba B: 这样吧,	nǐ yòng diànzǐ yóu 你用电子邮 jiàn bǎ gōng kè fū 件把功课发 gěi wǒ jiù xíng le 给我就行了。		

### Giving examples using 以……为例

以······为例 is used to introduce a specific example of the related topic, meaning "take...for example". It usually appears in rather formal contexts.

General statement	yǐ wéi lì 以······为例	Case in point
Yuè lới yuè duō de 越来越多的 Zhōngguórén chū 中国人出 guó lǚyóu 国旅游。	Yǐ nián wéi lì 以 2011年为例,	Zhōngguó chūjìngyóu 中国出境游 de réncì dádào qī 的人次达到七 qiānwàn yǐshàng 千万以上。
Měiguó shì yí gè 美国是一个 yímín guójiā 移民国家。	Yǐ Niǔyuē wéi lì 以纽约为例,	yuē de Niǔyuērén 约 1/3 的 纽约人 shì zài Měiguó yǐwài 是在美国以外 chūshēng de 出生的。
Dà chéng 大城 shì de jiāotōng 市的交通 wèntí hěn duō 问题很多。	Yǐ Běijīng wéi lì 以北京为例,	jihū měitiān shàng 几乎每天 上 xiàbān de shíhou 下班的时候 dōu dǔ chē 都堵车。

### Expressing "provide" using 为……提供

为······提供······is a rather fixed collocation. The prepositional phrase "为+object" is always placed before the verb phrase "提供+object". The object of 为 is the beneficiary of the action, while the object of 提供 is some kind of resource/benefit.

Subject	Preposition	Object	Verb	Object
Zhèngfǔ 政府 yìnggāi 应该	wèi 为	qióngrén 穷人	tígōng 提供	zhùfáng 住房。
Gōngsī 公司	wèi 为	zhíyuán 职员	tígōng 提供	miǎnfèi de 免费 的 wǔcān 午餐。
Fàndiàn 饭店	wèi 为	kèrén 客人	tígōng 提供	xǐchē fúwù 洗车服务。

## Expressing potential/capability using potential complements

A potential complement is always used together with the main verb, forming a construction to express the subject's internal capacity or potential to do something. The form is Verb+得+Complement (or Verb+不+Complement for negation). The complements usually carry meaning themselves. For example, 懂 means "understand", and 听得懂 means "be able to understand through listening". Refer to Unit 1 to refresh your memory of the resultative complement. To insert 得 / 不 between the verb and resultative complement forms the potential complement.

Other	Verb	de bù 得/不	Potential complement	Object
Gōngzuò tài duō 工作太多, zhè ge xīngqī wǒ 这个星期我	zuò 做	bù 不	wán 完。	
Zài Měiguó nǐ 在美国你	mǎi 买	bú 不	dào 到	zhè běn shū 这本书。
wŏ 我	kàn 看	de 得	dǒng 懂	中文 bàozhǐ 报纸。
Tā yí gè rén 他一个人	chī 吃	Sili	wán 完	zhème 这么 duō cài 多菜。
Nǐde huà wǒ 你的话我	ting 听	de 得	hěn qīngchu 很清楚。	

Expressing "only/just" using 光······就····· Or

When indicating "only" or "just", 光 has to be used either with 不 or 就. 光······就······is used to illustrate the size/amount/number is exceptionally large. 光······不/没有······is used to explain that one condition alone does not suffice.

Guāng yǒu qián bú huì xìngfú 光有钱不会幸福。

Yào xiǎng shàng míngpái dàxué guāng huì niànshū kǎoshì 要想上名牌大学,光会念书、考试 shì bù xíng de hái děi yǒu hěn duō xìngqù-àihào hé tècháng 是不行的,还得有很多兴趣爱好和特长。

Yào xiǎng xué hǎo wàiyǔ guāng liànxí yǔfǎ méiyǒu yòng 要想学好外语,光练习语法没有用,

hái děi duō shuō 还得多说。

Tā jīntiān tài è le guāng mǐfàn jiù chīle sān wǎn 他今天太饿了,光米饭就吃了三碗。

wǒ xué Zhōngwén de sùdù tài màn le guōng pīnyīn jiù xué 我学中文的速度太慢了,光拼音就学 le yì nián 了一年。

Tā tài néng mǎi dōngxi le guāng xiézi jiù yǒu yìbǎiduō shuāng 她太能买东西了,光鞋子就有一百多双。

### Expressing "concerning" using 关于

The proposition 关于 is used in rather formal contexts. It can be used at a beginning of a sentence to introduce the topic, meaning "as for, regarding". It can also be used to modify noun phrases, meaning "about".

Guānyú zhè ge wèntí wǒmen děi hǎohǎo tǎolùn yíxià 关于这个问题,我们得好好讨论一下。

Guānyú Zhōng-Měi guānxi wǒ liǎojiě de bù duō 关于 中美 关系,我了解得不多。

Gāi túshūshū cángyǒu xǔduō guānyú Zhōngguó gǔdài lìshǐ 该图书馆 藏有 许多关于 中国古代历史

de shūjí 的书籍。

Běn cì huiyì de zhǔtí shì guānyú shāmò dìqū de huánjìng 本次会议的主题是关于沙漠地区的环境 bǎohù 保护。

### Expressing contrast of meaning using 而

The conjunctive 而 often means "in contrast" or "instead of", indicating a contrast between the situations in two clauses. It is often used together with the adverb 却, which appears before the verb in the second clause.

Clause 1	Conjunctive	Clause 2
Tā fùmǔ xīwàng tā 他父母希望他 shàng fǎxuéyuàn 上 法学院,	ér Mij	tā què xiǎng xué xīnwén 他却想学新闻。

Clause 1	Conjunctive	Clause 2
Yìbān lài shuō xué wài 一般来说,学外 yǔ dōu xūyào lǎoshī 语都需要老师,	ér mj	Wáng lín shì zìxué de 王 林是自学的。
Hánguó rén hǎoxiàng dōu 韩国人好像都 xǐhuan chī làde 喜欢吃辣的。	ér m	wode Hánguó péngyou 我的韩国朋友 què bù xǐhuan chī 却不喜欢吃。

### wǎngwǎng chángcháng Expressing regularity using 往 往 or 常 常

Both 往往 and 常常 are adverbs indicating something happens repeatedly. However, they are not interchangeable. While 常常 is used to emphasize frequent repetition, 往往 is used to stress the regularity of a situation which is caused by some other reason.

Topic	wǎngwǎng 往往	Comment
Jiéjiàrì de shíhou 节假日的时候, lùyóu jǐngdiǎn 旅游景点	Maria Company	rén tèbié duō 人特别多。
Wénhuà bèijǐng bùtóng 文化背景不同 de rén zàiyìqǐ zhù 的人在一起住	wǎngwǎng 往往	huì fāshēng hěnduō 会发生很多 máodùn 矛盾。
Dàfang de rén 大方的人		fēicháng shòu huānyíng 非常 受 欢迎。

### The preposition 按照

The preposition 按照 can be used to express "in accordance with". "按照+noun phrase" always appears before the main verb.

Subject/Topic	Preposition	Noun phrase	Verb
nǐ děi 你得	ànzhào 按照	shuōmíngshū 说明书	zǔzhuāng 组装 jiājù 家具。
Zhè ge fànguǎn 这个饭馆 de chúshī kěyǐ 的厨师可以	ànzhào 按照	kèrén de yāoqiú 客人的要求	zuò cài 做菜。

Subject/Topic	Preposition	Noun phrase	Verb
Wǒ xīwàng 我希望 jiānglái kěyǐ 将来可以	ànzhào 按照	zìjǐ de lǐxiǎng 自己 的 理想	shēnghuó 生活。
小水 马以			

### Expressing future plans using 等 ……了

The structure 等……了 is used to set up a future/hypothetical time frame, and the clause that follows is a plan that is based on the realization of the future/hypothetical situation.

Time clause	Main clause	
Děng tiānqì nuǎnhuo yìdiǎn le 等 天气 暖 和一点了,	wǒmen zài qù Niǔyuē wán 我们再去纽约玩。	
Děng dàxué bìyè le 等 大学毕业了,	nǐmen jiù kěyǐ zìyóu xuǎnzé 你们就可以自由选择 zòi shénme dìfang shēnghuó 在什么地方生活。	
Děng wǒ jiéhūn le 等 我结婚了,	wǒ yídìng yào shēng sì gè 我一定要生四个 háizi 孩子。	

### The difference between 刚才 and 刚

Even though they are similar in form and meaning, 刚 and 刚才 are usually not interchangeable. 刚才 is a time expression, so it can be placed either before or after the subject. 刚 is an adverb, and has to be placed before the verb and after the subject. 刚才 always refers to the time immediately before now, 刚 indicates that the action occurred a relatively short period of time ago (which could be one second or one year).

Gāngcái yǒu gè nǚháizi lái zhǎoguò nǐ liúle diànhuà 刚才有个女孩子来找过你,留了电话。

Gāngcái gēn nǐ shuōhuà de rén shì shuí a 刚才跟你说话的人是谁啊?

Ānnà Gāngcái zài chāoshì pèngdào le Shǐdifū 安娜 刚才 在 超市 碰 到 了 史蒂夫。

shàng gè xīng qī Wǒ gāng cóng Zhōngguó huílai (上个星期)我刚从中国回来。

wǒ gāng dào jiā jiù jiēdàole tā dǎlái de diànhuà 我刚到家,就接到了他打来的电话。

Zhè ge yǔfǎ wǒmen shàng gè xuéqī gāng xuéguò 这个语法 我们(上 个学期)刚 学过。

### Implicit comparison using $\cdots$ 一点

When ····· 一点 is used, an implicit comparison is made, which can only be drawn from the context. Meaning "a little bit more...(than usual)", ····· 一点 is often used in imperative sentences expressing the speaker's suggestion, request or demand.

Subject	Possible implicit comparison	Stative verb/ Adjective	Complement
Zhè ge difang 这个地方 de fángzū 的房租	bǐ wǒ xiǎng de 比我想的	guile 贵了	yìdiǎn 一点。
Nǐ děi 你得		gāoxìng 高兴	yìdiǎn , 一点。
Wǒ mèimei de 我妹妹的 Zhōngwén 中文	bǐ wǒ 比我	hǎo 好	yidiǎn 一点。

### Expressing "even if" using 就算……也……

The conjuctive structure 就算……也…… is used to indicate that even if the condition in the first clause is realized, the situation in the second clause will not change. 就算 is placed at the beginning of the first clause, while 也 appears after the subject of the second clause.

	Clause 1	Clause 2		
jiùsuàn 就算	Other	Subject	yě 也	Other
	nǐ tèbié máng 你特别忙,		yě 也	yìnggāi měi gè 应该每个 yuè gěi fùmǔ dǎ 月给父母打 yí cì diànhuà 一次电话。
Jiùsuàn 就算	zhè fèn gōngzuò 这份工作 zhèngqián duō 挣钱多,	Măkè 马克	yě 也	bú huì zuò 不会做。 Yīnwèi tài kū (因为太枯 zào le 燥了)。
Jiùsuàn 就算	bú huì shuō 不会说 Zhōngwén 中文,	Yǒngmín 永民	yě 也	kěyǐ zài Zhōng 可以在中 guó shēnghuó 国生活。

### Expressing contrast of meaning using 却

The adverb 却 is used to express the contrast of meaning between two clauses. It can be combined with 虽然 and/ or 可是/而 to emphasize the contrast. 却 has to appear after the subject of the second clause if it is not dropped or implied.

	Clause 2			
Clause 1	kěshì (可是/ dànshì ér 但是/而)	Subject	què 却	Other
Wánchéng zhè 完成这 xiàng rènwu suī 项任务虽 rán hěn xīnkǔ 然很辛苦,	kěshì 可是			fēicháng yǒu 非常 有 yìsi 意思。
Guòjié de shí 过节的时 hou dàjiā dōu 候大家都 huíjiā le 回家了,	ér m	wŏ 我	què 却	liúzài xué 留在学 xiào xuéxí 校学习。
Měinián dōng 每年 冬 tiān Běijīng dōu 天北京都 hěn lěng 很冷,	dànshì 但是	jīnnián 今年	TEST GASTA	hěn nuǎnhuo 很暖和。

## The difference between 总 (是) and 老 (是)

Both 总(是) and 老(是) are adverbs indicating something happens all the time. However, while 总是 only refers to the high frequency of the happening, 老(是) expresses an accusatory tone by the speaker, who seems to be annoyed by the situation.

Subject	Adverb	Verb phrase/Stative verb phrase
Shànghǎi de yèwǎn 上海的夜晚		hěn rènao 很热闹。
Shànghǎi de xiàtiān	lǎo shì	hěn rè
上海的夏天	老是	很热!
tō	zǒngshì	hěn zhǔnshí
他	总是	很准时。

Subject	Adverb	Verb phrase/Stative verb phrase
tā	lǎo shì	lái de hěn wǎn
他	老是	来得很晚!
Nǐ zěnme	lǎo	bù jiē wǒde diànhuà
你怎么	老	不接我的电话!
Nǐ zěnme 你怎么	zŏng 总	néng mǎidào yòu piányi yòu 能 买到 又便宜又 hǎode jìniànpǐn 好的纪念品!

### Forming rhetorical questions using 难道

The adverb 难道 is used to form a rhetorical question, which is asked without the expectation of an answer for the purpose of making a point or stressing something. 难道 can usually appear at the beginning of the rhetorical question or right before the verb.

nándào 难道	Subject	nándào 难道	Question
Nándào 难道			bù zhīdào nǐ xǐhuan shén 不知道你喜欢什 meyàng de rén ma 么样的人吗?
	Bǎohù huánjìng 保护 环境		bù yīnggāi ma 不 应该 吗?
Nándào 难道			bù yīnggāi ànzhào zì jǐ 不应该按照自己 de xìngqù-àihào xuǎnzé 的兴趣爱好选择 zhuānyè ma 专业吗?

## Noun phrases with 像……这样/那样……

The structure 像······那样····· is used to form a noun phrase referring to a group of things/people/places that share some common characteristics. What appears after 像 is a typical example of the group.

Other	xiàng 像	Specific noun	nàyàng 那样 / zhèyàng 这样	General noun	Other
wŏ xǐ 我喜 huan 欢		Niǔyuē 纽约	nàyàng de 那样的	chéngshì 城市。	
		jinnián 今年 dōngtiān 冬天	nàyàng de 那样的	tiānqì 天气,	zhēn ràng rén 真 让人 shòu bù liǎo 受不了。
	Xiàng 像	Ānnán 安南	zhèyàng de 这样的	The same of the sa	lǎo shī men dōu 老师 们 都 hěn xǐhuan 很喜欢。

Polite counter-argument:······是······,

### 可是/就是……

The conjunctive structure ······是·····,可是/就是······ is used to offer a counter-argument in a polite way by partially agreeing with the other speaker. The emphasis is on the meaning appearing after 可是/就是. The adjective/emotional verb that appears before and repeats after 是 is mostly positive in meaning. 是 is an adverb here, meaning "indeed", "although".

	Cla	ause	1	kěshì 可是/		
Context	Adj/Verb	是 Adj/Verb		jiùshì 就是	Clause 2	
Niǔ yuē de A: 纽约的 dì tiě fēicháng 地铁 非常 fāngbiàn 方便!	Fāngbiàn B: 方便			kěshì 可是	shèshī tài 设施 太 lǎojiù 老旧 le 了!	
Dàishù A: 代数 xuéhǎole fēi 学好了非 cháng yǒu yòng 常有用	Yǒuyòng B:有用		yǒuyòng 有用,	kěshì 可是	tài nán 太难 le 了!	

	Cla	ause	kěshì 可是/			
Context	Adj/Verb	shì 是	Adj/Verb	jiùshì 就是	Clause 2	
Nándào A: 难道 nǐ bù xǐhuan 你不喜欢 Zhōngwénma 中文 吗?	Xǐhuan B:喜欢	10000	xǐhuan 喜欢,	kěshì 可是	tài nán 太难 le 了!	

### The conjunctive 既······又······

The conjunctive structure 既……又…… is used to connect two parallel structures in a topic-comment sentence. The parallel structures can be adjectives or verb structures.

C 1:		Comment						
Subject topic		Clause 1	Clause 2					
Shàng Zhōngguó 上 中国 lìshǐkè 历史课,	既既	liǎojiěle Zhōng 了解了中 guó lìshǐ 国历史	10	xuéle 学了 Zhōng wén 中文。				
Hǎo xuésheng 好学生	10 March 1981	cōngmíng 聪明	Section 19 and 1	yònggōng 用功。				
Tingdào zhè ge 听到 这个 xiāoxi wŏ 消息,我		gāoxìng 高兴	yòu 又	nánguò 难过。				

### **Picture captions**

Unit 1 p15 West Gate of Peking University, Beijing / p18 Campus of Tsinghua University, Beijing / p21 Temple of Heaven, Beijing / p25 Stationery used in Chinese calligraphy

Unit 2 p28 Forbidden City, Beijing / p30 Temple of Heaven, Beijing / pp34–35 Three lattice doors, Circular Mound Altar, Temple of Heaven, Beijing

Unit 3 p39 Sundial at Tsinghua University, Beijing / p43 Kangxi Emperor, Du Fu, Zheng He, Confucius / pp46–47 West Lake after rain, Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province

Unit 4 p51 Beijing Opera actress in front of Temple of Heaven, Beijing / p55 Songshan Mountain, Henan Province / pp58–59 Lianhua Lake in Zizhuyuan Park, Beijing / p60 Chinese junk, Hong Kong

Review 1 p66 Forbidden City, Beijing

Unit 5 p67 Terminal 3 of Beijing Capital International Airport, Beijing / p70 Temple of Heaven, Beijing / p72 Turret Tower in snow, north-east corner of Forbidden City Museum, Beijing / p77 Statue of Genghis Khan, Xilingol Grassland, Inner Mongolia; Boat with dragon head on Huangpu River, with Oriental Pearl Tower in background, Shanghai

Unit 6 p79 Mongols in costume and yurt / p85 Man catching a horse, Inner Mongolian style, Hulunbei'er Grassland, Inner Mongolia / pp86–87 Wind Farm at Huitengxile Grassland, Inner Mongolia

Unit 7 p91 Red lantern and village houses, Shuangfeng Village, known as "Village of Snow", Mudanjiang, Heilongjiang Province

Unit 8 p103 Jinshanling Great Wall, Beijing/ p106 Horses on Hulunbei'er Grassland, Inner Mongolia / p107 Rice field, Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region / pp110–111 Hulunbei'er Grassland

Unit 9 p119 Gate of Shaolin Temple, He'nan Province/ p124 Pagoda Forest, Shaolin Temple, He'nan Province / pp126-127 Yulong River, Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region

Unit 10 p132 Burning incense at Jinshiyan Nunnery, Danxia Mountain, Shaoguan, Guangdong Province / p135 Elderly man practising tai chi in the morning / p140 Morning group exercise in Shanghai

Unit 11 p143 The Labyrinth at Yuanmingyuan, also known as the Old Summer Palace, Beijing / pp150–151 Daming Lake, Ji'nan, Shandong Province / p153 Image on a Chinese stamp, "Turning into butterflies to fly together"

Unit 12 p155 Young Chinese woman talking on a public phone, Beijing / pp162-163 Terraced rice paddies, Yuanyang County, Yunnan Province / p165 Qingyi, a female role in Beijing opera

Pairwork activities p174 National Centre for the Performing Arts / p175 Nalat Grassland, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region / p177 Porter in Danxia Mountain, Shaoguan, Guangdong Province / p179 Detian Waterfall, Guangxi Zhuang Antonomous Region / pp180–181 Night view of Turret Tower at north-east corner of Forbidden City Museum, Beijing / pp182–183 Village of the Miao Minority, Qianhu, Jiangxi Province

### **English translations**

#### Unit 1

### Vocabulary and listening

Amanda: Mark, there are so many elective courses that I can't decide. How did you choose

courses last year?

Mark: I chose according to my own interests.

I like Chinese martial arts, so I chose a

martial arts course.

Amanda: That sounds quite interesting. I've

always taken language courses in the past. It would be good to choose some

courses on Chinese culture.

Mark: Absolutely. After we leave China, we might not get another chance to learn

some of these things. Do you want to

take a calligraphy course?

Amanda: I haven't decided yet. I've heard that it's

quite hard, and it takes a long time to learn calligraphy well. I feel like I should learn something more practical, like

business writing.

Mark: Business writing is very useful, but it

is so boring. I remember that you like history; you could choose a Chinese

history course!

Amanda: Wouldn't that be too difficult? Would

they use a lot of difficult vocabulary?

Mark: This history course is relatively easy, so

don't worry. Of course, the course is conducted in Chinese, but that would

be helpful for improving your Chinese!

Amanda: How is the teacher for this course?

Mark: I heard she is quite good! She is called

Ms Huang, and is especially patient with

her students.

Amanda: Does Ms Huang speak too fast? Does

she use difficult words?

Mark: She doesn't speak too fast, and she doesn't

use difficult words. My friend said that he can understand Ms Huang most of the time. After class, you can also ask her if

there are things you don't understand.

Amanda: That sounds great! I'll take the Chinese

history course then. How do we enrol for

courses?

Mark: You just have to fill in a form at the

international student office.

### Reading and writing

Course name	Introduction	Assessment
Introductory Chinese History	<ul> <li>Objectives:         <ul> <li>a general introduction to Chinese history, helping students to build a solid foundation for future study of Chinese history.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Content:         <ul> <li>The development of Chinese history</li> </ul> </li> <li>The Ming and Qing Dynasties</li> </ul>	Exam: 50%  Assignments: 30%  Class Discussion: 10%  Group Project: 10%
Erhu Performance	The erhu is a traditional Chinese musical instrument. Students are taught about the erhu and learn basic instrumental techniques. Students will take two two-hour classes per week, and will be evaluated on their in-class performance and final examination.	Recital + oral test: 85%  Regular class performance: 15%
Reading Basic Classical Chinese	<ul> <li>Prerequisite: an intermediate level of Chinese, knowledge of 500-800 Chinese characters.</li> <li>Objectives: the course provides a basic foundation in classical Chinese. Students will learn basic classical Chinese grammar, and be taught the basic differences between classical Chinese and modern Chinese. By the end of the course, students should be able to read classical Chinese passages with the help of reference material.</li> </ul>	Exam: 70% Assignments: 30%

### Vocabulary and listening

Librarian: Hi! May I help you?

Hi. I have to return two books, and I'm Amanda:

also looking for some books about

Chinese history.

No problem. History books are on the third Librarian:

floor. What are you looking for specifically?

I'm taking a Chinese history course this Amanda: semester. Can you recommend some

classical works on Chinese history?

We have some classical historical works Librarian:

here, like Record of the Grand History and History of the Three Kingdoms. The first one was written by Sima Qian during the Han Dynasty, and the second one was written by Chen Shou during

the Western Jin Dynasty.

Are both books written in classical Chinese? Amanda:

Librarian: Yes, and they are both quite thick. Even

for a native Chinese speaker, the books

are quite hard to understand.

Amanda: Then they might be too difficult for

> me. Are there any books on the Ming and Qing Dynasties that are written in

modern Chinese?

We have a lot of those. Books on the Librarian:

Ming Dynasty are on Shelf 150 on the third floor, and books on the Qing

Dynasty are on Shelf 152.

Also, are there books that provide a Amanda:

general introduction to Chinese history,

some that are easier to read?

Librarian: Yes, there are. Please give me a moment.

> They are on Shelf 148. Take a look there; you should be able to find something

suitable.

Thanks, Where can I find the shelf? Amanda:

It's easiest to take the lift. Do you see Librarian:

> that photocopier? The lift is to the right of the photocopier. Take the lift to the third floor, then turn left. Walk past the Periodicals Room and you will see the

Chinese history section.

Thank you so much! Amanda:

### Reading and writing

Online book review 1: An Introduction to Chinese History

This book by Dr Liu is a very good primer of Chinese history. Starting from the prehistoric era, this book follows dynastic changes up to and including 20th century modern Chinese history. Rich in content but using straightforward language, this is the ideal book for novice students. However, there is relatively little emphasis on modern Chinese history; if that is your area of interest, this may not be the book for you.

Online book review 2: Illustrated Chinese History

I like Illustrated Chinese History. I bought the book with the intention of gaining a basic grasp of Chinese history. However, I soon got caught up in the book, and finished it before I knew it. The focus of the book is neither on the emperors of each dynasty, nor on wars. It focuses on traditional Chinese culture-philosophy, religion, art, law and daily life. The pictures in the book are very appealing. This book is ideally suited to people who are just starting to learn Chinese history. If you are interested in a particular topic, you can refer to the recommended titles at the end of this book. Of course, if you are more demanding, you might find that the content is too simple. However, if, like me, you are new to Chinese history, I strongly recommend Illustrated Chinese History.

### Vocabulary and listening

Amanda: Yeong-min!

Yeong-min: Amanda! I haven't seen you for a while.

How have you been?

Amanda: Fine, thanks. What have you been doing?

Yeong-min: I've been busy preparing to enter a music

competition. How about you? What have

you been doing besides class?

Amanda: My drama group is practising for a new

> play called Alice in China, which is going to be performed at the student centre at the end of the semester. I'm playing Alice.

Yeong-min: That's great! I'll definitely come to watch

your performance.

Amanda: I can't believe you've also picked this

Chinese history course. I saw you sitting

in the front row.

Yeong-min: I can hear the teacher more clearly when

I'm sitting at the front.

Amanda: Did you hear the teacher say when our

assignment is due? I couldn't hear it clearly because everyone was packing up and it

was too noisy. Is it due on Thursday?

Yeong-min: No, it's due on Wednesday.

Amanda: Can I submit it at any time on Wednesday?

Yeong-min: It has to be handed in before 4.

Amanda: Before 10.

Yeong-min: No, before 4 pm.

Amanda: I'm sorry. It's pretty noisy here too.

Yeong-min: Don't worry. Have you decided on a

topic for the assignment yet?

Amanda: Not yet. How about you?

Yeong-min: I was hoping you would give me some ideas!

Amanda: We should talk about it together. Are you

busy right now? We could go to a café.

Yeong-min: I'm sorry, I've got a class right now, so I

have to go. Let's call or text each other and make plans to meet another day. You've

got my phone number, haven't you?

Amanda: I have. I'll see you later then.

Yeong-min: Bye!

### Reading and writing

### History quiz Ordering 1. Place the following dynasties in ascending chronological order. Han Dynasty Qin Dynasty Qing Dynasty 3 Tang Dynasty 2. Place the following historical figures in ascending chronological order according to their birth dates. Confucius **Emperor Huang** Genghis Khan Matching 1. Draw lines to match the names with the roles.

1) Li Bai

a maritime navigator

2) Zheng He

b emperor

3) Confucius

c philosopher

4) Qinshihuang

d poet

2. Draw lines to match the artifacts with the dynasty they are from.

1) Terracotta Warriors

a Qin Dynasty

2) Tri-coloured glazed pottery

b Han Dynasty

3) Bronze Horse

c Tang Dynasty

3. Draw lines to match the authors with the names of their literary works.

1) Sima Qian a The Art of War

2) Sun Tzu

b The Records of the Three Kingdoms

3) Chen Shou c The Record of the Grand History

#### Multiple choice

- 1. Check the two correct statements.
  - a) The First Emperor of Qin was the last emperor of China.
  - b) The Qing Dynasty ended in the 19th century.
  - c) The Tang Dynasty is famed for its poetry.
  - d) Chinese is also called Hanyu, named after the Han Dynasty.
- 2. The Silk Road began in the
  - a) Han Dynasty
  - b) Tang Dynasty
  - c) Qing Dynasty
  - d) Ming Dynasty

#### **Short questions**

- Explain and illustrate two important philosophical concepts by Confucius.
- 2. Briefly explain the historical importance of *The Record of the Grand History*.

#### Unit 4

### Vocabulary and listening

Amanda: It's really quiet here. Have you decided what

you're going to do for your history assignment?

Yeong-min: Let's read the assignment question

again: "Choose a hero in Chinese history, introduce his/her life story and explain

why you think he/she is a hero."

Amanda: But what kind of person can be considered

a hero?

Yeong-min: Doesn't a hero mean an important person?

Amanda: Not necessarily. A normal person can be

a hero, like Hua Mulan.

Yeong-min: The girl in the Disney movie Mulan?

Amanda: That's right. Hua Mulan pretended to be

a man to take her father's place in a war. It would have been exceptional for a young girl to do that in ancient China.

Yeong-min: Are you sure that story is real?

Amanda: Well ... I'm not quite sure.

Yeong-min: I don't think we can write about people

from folklore. How about Bruce Lee?

Amanda: Bruce Lee, the martial arts star? I don't

think so. He was just an actor.

Yeong-min: He was not just an actor. He had said many

times, "I am a martial artist first, an actor second." He introduced the world to

Chinese martial arts.

Amanda: That makes sense. You should write about

him then. What do you think about Zheng He?

Yeong-min: The maritime explorer from the Ming Dynasty?

Did he do anything very important?

Amanda: Of course he did! Zheng He sailed all across

South East Asia, and even reached India and Africa. The maritime cultural exchange and trade between China and all those countries and regions began with his voyages. I think his influence on Chinese

history is much larger than Bruce Lee's!

Yeong-min: I disagree. There have been so many

maritime explorers throughout history; he

doesn't sound that great.

Amada: I think Zheng He's life is well worth writing

about. He sailed seven voyages, and the nautical charts created by his fleet were

used by many people.

Yeong-min: I see. Well, then you should write about

Zheng He.

#### The life story of Bruce Lee

Li Xiaolong, also known as Bruce Lee, was born on 27 November 1940, in San Francisco, California, US. Bruce Lee's father was a Cantonese opera actor from Hong Kong, and was then completing a performance tour in the United States that he had started in 1939 with his wife and two daughters. Bruce Lee was the fourth child of the family.

Not long after Bruce was born, his family moved back to Hong Kong. At the age of seven, he started learning tai chi from his father. In 1953, he began studying a type of martial arts known as Wing Chun. Bruce Lee had a great passion for martial arts. To improve his skill, he learnt a large variety of punching techniques, including western boxing styles. This foundation allowed him to create his own style of martial arts later. In 1959, Bruce Lee went back to the United States for further studies.

Between the years 1965 and 1971, Bruce Lee starred in many American films and television series. In particular, his role in the series *The Green Hornet* in 1966–67 catapulted him to stardom. In 1971, Bruce moved back to Hong Kong with his wife and two children. Upon arriving in Hong Kong, he starred in several movies that were extremely successful.

On 20 July 1973, Bruce Lee passed away due to an allergic reaction to medication. After his final work, *Game of Death,* was released, he became a famous martial arts star all around the world.

### Unit 5

### Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Hello. I'd like to check in for my flight.

Attendant: Hello. May I have your passport and

destination, please?

Steve: This is my passport. I am visiting Tongliao

in Inner Mongolia, and transferring at

Hohhot.

Attendant: All right, thank you.

Steve: I ordered my tickets online; do I need to

show you the credit card I used?

Attendant: No, there's no need. You'll be on the flight

departing at 12:45 pm. Do you have any luggage that needs to be checked in?

Steve: Yes, just one piece.

Attendant: Please place it on the conveyor belt. I'm

sorry, but your luggage is 3 kg overweight.

Steve: Really? Please wait a moment. I'll take

out a few of the books since they are

quite heavy.

(Steve takes some books from the luggage.)

Steve: Is it all right now?

Attendant: Yes, thank you.

Steve: Excuse me, could I have a window seat?

Attendant: Just a moment, let me check. I'm sorry,

there are only aisle seats left.

Steve: That's all right. I'll take the aisle seat then.

Attendant: This is your boarding pass and luggage

tag. Gate 22. Boarding begins at 12:15, and the doors will close 15 minutes before take-off. After you arrive in Hohhot, you will need to transfer flights, so please

keep your belongings with you.

Steve: Upon transferring at Hohhot, do I need

to retrieve the luggage that has just

been checked in?

Attendant: That won't be necessary. You'll retrieve

your luggage in Tongliao.

Steve: That's great. Thank you!

Attendant: Have a pleasant journey!

10:50, 7 November

Due to snowstorm conditions, some flights from our airport will be affected. Please beware of the changes in weather and contact your flight carrier in due time, or call the service hotline for the airport.

Due to a cold front, there has been snowfall all over the northern provinces of China, causing many airports and highways to shut down. According to the National Meteorological Centre, there will be snow in the Northern provinces for the upcoming two days, with snowstorms in certain areas.

On Monday evening, winds of up to Force 6 blew within Beijing city areas. Within two days, the temperature in Beijing dropped from 5°C to -15°C. One Beijing resident remarked, "It is really cold today! I felt the wind when I left the house this morning, and it became almost unbearably cold just after taking a few steps outdoors!"

Traffic in Beijing has been affected by snowfall. In the snowstorm, several hundred traffic policemen directed traffic on the major transportation routes. In the afternoon and evening on Tuesday, snowfall caused more than 300 flights to be delayed and 240 flights to be cancelled.

Areas surrounding Beijing, including Inner Mongolia, Shanxi Province, Hebei Province and Tianjin, were all affected by snowstorms. In total, 11 major highways were shut down. According to the National Meteorological Centre, the effects of the cold front will persist until next Monday.

#### Unit 6

### Vocabulary and listening

Mr Fang: We're back! This is our guest, Steve.

Mrs Fang: Steve, please come in.
Mr Fang: This is my wife, Li Mei.

Steve: Pleased to meet you. I'm sorry that the

flight was delayed by so much.

Mrs Fang: Don't worry, it's good that you arrived safely.
Mr Fang: This is Fang Qing, our only daughter.
Steve: Hello, Fang Qing. Nice to meet you!

Fang Qing: Hello, Steve.

Mr Fang: Please stay here and chat for a while. I'll

go get the luggage.

Steve: No, please, I can fetch it myself.

Mrs Fang: It's all right! Let my husband do it. I'll

bring you to your room.

Steve: Thank you very much.

Mrs Fang: Please, come this way. Our home isn't

very big. Here is the kitchen on the right, and the bathroom on the left. This is your bedroom, and Fang Qing's bedroom is right next door. I apologize for how plain the house is. I just changed your bedsheet and blankets. The desk and chair are for you to do your work. This is the rubbish bin.

Steve: Such a nice room!

Mrs Fang: This is your towel and toothbrush. They

are both new. Here is the remote control

for the air conditioner.

Steve: That's great. You've really thought of

everything.

Mrs Fang: Oh, not at all! Please join us for some tea

in the living room.

(in the living room)

Mr Fang: Steve, your Putonghua is very good. It's

even better than ours!

Steve: Oh, I'm flattered.

Mr Fang: What do your parents do?

Steve: My father is a lawyer and my mother is a

teacher.

Mr Fang: What fantastic jobs! They must earn a lot.

Fang Qing: Father, our English teacher told us that

it is very impolite to ask Westerners

questions like that!

Mr Fang: Is that so? I'm so sorry, I didn't know!

Steve: That's all right. Actually, I don't know

how much they earn either.

#### A diary entry by Steve

### 25 November (Wednesday); windy

Arrived in Tongliao today. I should have arrived yesterday, but the flight was delayed for 12 hours due to the blizzard. The family I am staying with is very friendly; I feel like I am living in my own home. Mr Fang went all the way to the airport to pick me up and helped with my luggage. Mrs Fang seems to be always busy, either washing the dishes from dinner, or sweeping the floor or doing the laundry. Of course, I help with the chores as well, hanging the clothes up to dry, clearing the table and tidying my own room. Their only daughter Fang Qing is a bit shy, but she really looks like Wang Yu...

Tongliao is in the eastern part of Inner Mongolia, close to Jilin Province and Liaoning Province. It has a population of three million, with a lot of ethnic minorities. The Fang family belong to the Han ethnicity, but they speak Putonghua with a bit of a local accent, so sometimes it is difficult to understand them. I think I'll get used to it soon enough. At first, when Mark spoke to me in English, I couldn't understand him fully either, since there is a difference between Australian English and British English, both in vocabulary and pronunciation.

Today, when we were chatting, Mr Fang asked how much my parents earned per month. Fortunately, during Chinese class, our teacher had previously taught us that Chinese people often ask about the age and income of others; they do not consider it as much a matter of privacy as Westerners. Fang Qing said that her English teacher also told them about this cultural difference, and Mr Fang was quite embarrassed when he found out.

Tomorrow, I will start to work. I am going to a nearby primary school to interview their headmaster, teachers and students; I will also take some photos. Perhaps the primary school in a small northern town will be different from primary schools in other places. I hope everything goes well. Too bad that it is winter right now-if it were summer, the great grassland in Inner Mongolia would be very beautiful.

### Unit 7

### Vocabulary and listening

Ms Ma, thank you for agreeing to this Steve:

interview. I heard from the headmaster

that you are not a local?

Ms Ma: That's right. I was born and raised in Tianjin,

and attended university in Beijing.

Steve: Both Tianjin and Beijing are very large cities

How did you come to work in Tongliao?

Ms Ma: When I graduated from university, I

> wanted a change of scenery, and didn't want to live in a large city any more.

So you decided to come to Inner Mongolia? Steve:

Ms Ma: A change of scenery is only one of the

> reasons. I've always wanted to be a teacher, and I feel like remote areas with an insufficient education infrastructure need good teachers all the more. My

work means more here.

Steve: Living here must be very different from

living in a large city.

Ms Ma: Yes, very much so! For instance, I was

> used to skyscrapers and busy streets, so it is especially quiet here for me. Living in large cities can be stressful; people tend to be very tense, yet also feel empty inside. Here, although my job is not easy, I feel

that life is meaningful and enjoyable.

Are there things that you feel are Steve: inconvenient about living here?

Ms Ma:

as in large cities, and a lot of facilities are quite primitive. However, I like this simple lifestyle. Although I don't earn a lot, things are less expensive here, so my life here is OK. I especially love the children here; they are vivacious and they love to learn. I am always so happy

The quality of life may not be as good

when I am with them!

A blog post by Steve

26 November (Thursday)

Today, I visited a primary school in Tongliao, Inner Mongolia. The headmaster, teachers and students are all very enthusiastic. I liked them very much.

There is a large difference between the primary education here and in England. For example, every primary school class here has almost sixty students; that is much more than in England. I remember when I was in primary school, classes had no more than twenty students.

The reason why there are so many students in one class is that there are not enough teachers. It is difficult for schools in remote areas to attract teachers. Since there are not enough teachers, every teacher has to teach multiple grades. I interviewed a teacher, Ms Ma, who studied in Beijing and graduated to teach in Tongliao. She has to teach Chinese and mathematics for two grades alone, and sometimes, she even has to teach art and physical education. Nonetheless, Ms Ma says that she feels like her life is fulfilled even though work is busy. I hope that there will be more university students like her, who are willing to come to remote areas to teach.

The primary school also has rather primitive facilities. The classrooms are very small. Without a computer or the Internet, students mainly rely on the traditional textbooks, blackboard and chalk to learn. People often say that modern technology has a large impact on education, but here, technology is not essential.

The interesting thing is that students here respect teachers and discipline more. The Chinese put great emphasis on education, and even primary school kids love learning. However, they are children after all, so they still love playing in the courtyard during breaks.

I brought some sweets for the children. They were a bit shy in the beginning, but we became familiar before long. We played games and I took a lot of photos with them.

#### Unit 8

### Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Hello. I understand that you're the Head

Engineer. Can you please tell me how to

write your name?

Li Ming: My name is Li Ming. L-i, Li. M-i-n-g, Ming.

Steve: Thank you, Engineer Li. I've heard that the main aim of this ecological engineering project is to plant trees in the Horqin Desert. Why do you want to manually

change the natural environment?

Li Ming: We are not manually changing the environment, we are reverting it to its

original state. The Horqin region was not a desert originally; before 1970, the region

was forests, pastures, and grassland.

Steve: I never knew that. Then how did the

desert in Horqin form?

Li Ming: The natural changes in climate and

environment are part of the reason, but the main reason is over-development and excessive grazing. There is a Daqinggou Nature Reserve nearby – although it is surrounded by sand, there is dense plant growth in the reserve, with some trees that are over 80 years old. Therefore, our conclusion is that

Hongin wasn't always a desert.

Steve: I see. Can you tell me about the significance

of your engineering project?

Li Ming: Firstly, desertification means that the

amount of usable land continually decreases, so we must stop the desert from growing in area. Secondly, the Horqin region is subject to windstorms; once these windstorms become sandstorms, they will affect Liaoning, or even Beijing and Tianjin, places which are several hundred kilometres away. Therefore, a lot hangs on the success of

this project.

Steve: That's amazing! The project mustn't be easy?

Li Ming: It's not easy at all. Why don't I bring you

to where we plant the trees? Then you

can talk to my colleagues.

Steve: That would be great!

A report on Inner Mongolia

Of the four largest deserts, the Horqin Desert is the largest. Every spring, it is a source of sand for the sandstorms that appear over large areas in the northern and north-eastern part of China. This has a significant impact on the weather and environment of the middle part of Liaoning Province, and also of the Beijing and Tianjin regions.

To understand the management of the situation, the reporter interviewed Head Engineer Li Ming, the person in charge of an ecological engineering project in the Tongliao area, and his colleagues.

Li Ming cited the example of the Daqinggou Nature Reserve nearby, to demonstrate that the formation of the Horqin Desert is due to human activity. "We think the major reasons are over-development and excessive grazing," Li Ming said. He also said that the decrease of grasslands and forests created an environment that allows deserts to form.

The project that Li Ming was in charge of was revitalizing the greenery in the Horqin region. Every year, they plant and conserve many trees in the Horqin region. They also set up protection fences, which prevent the desert from expanding. Also, they stop wild animals from destroying the new plants.

There are a lot of similar ecological engineering projects in the Horqin region, and they have created a positive impact on the environment. According to the newest figures from the State Forest Bureau of China, there are 750,000 acres more of land undergoing reforestation than are turning into desert every year. Desertification is gradually being brought under control all around China; sandstorms are becoming less frequent and less destructive. For instance, many people in Beijing can attest that there have not been as many sandstorms in recent years.

#### Unit 9

### Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Bo, the Shaolin Temple is huge!

Wang Bo: Yes, the total area of the temple is over

30,000 square metres. Look at this map. There are still a lot of attractions we

haven't been to.

Steve: Look at that. Are they monks practising?

I've always wanted to see the worldfamous Shaolin Kung fu! I'd like to learn

it myself.

Wang Bo: That's right. That's the monks practising

Kung fu. The Shaolin Kung fu is more

than 1500 years old.

Steve: Are they practising for martial arts performances? I've heard that the Shaolin

monks always do overseas performances.

Wang Bo: The Shaolin Temple monks have performed

in more than 60 countries and regions. But practice is not just for performances; for

them, it is part of their austerities.

Steve: I see. Look! Their moves are so cool!

Wang Bo: Ha ha, it's not just about cool gestures

only; they are the real thing. Some of them can scale high walls; some have great strength and can lift things that are much heavier than themselves. Some can even

lie on sword points unharmed.

Steve: That's amazing! How did they train in

these skills?

Wang Bo: Well, it's hard to explain in a few words.

Take the seated position, which is one of the simplest positions. You have to practise it well. Then they will gradually add heavy things to the top of your head to train perseverance. After two or three years, the muscles in your arms

and legs will be very strong.

Steve: Two or three years just for the seated

position? What incredible perseverance!

Wang Bo: There's an old saying in China that means

"Where there's a will, there's a way".

Steve: I know that saying. People with

determination and perseverance will

succeed.

The Shaolin Temple

The Shaolin Temple is in Mount Song in Henan Province, China. It has more than 1500 years of history. There are many beautiful stories about this ancient temple, and many movies have been inspired by them. Among the films about the temple, the most famous one is the eponymous film of 1982.

The film story takes place in the Sui Dynasty. Xiaohu, the son of a famous martial arts family, was chased by the men who murdered his father. He was saved at the Shaolin Temple. Xiaohu became a monk at the temple and trained himself in martial arts. Together with the monks, he helped Li Shimin fight his enemies, and also avenged his father. There is also a love story between Xiaohu and the shepherdess Bai Wuxia. In the end, Li Shimin became emperor of the Tang Dynasty and heavily rewarded the Shaolin Temple, which had assisted him. Both the martial arts direction and the story of the film are excellent.

The Shaolin Temple did very well at the box office when it was released, and it began the martial arts craze all over the world anew. Jet Li, who played Xiaohu, rocketed to instant stardom. At that time, a lot of martial arts films would use stunt doubles, but Jet Li did all of his own stunts in The Shaolin Temple. After this film, he moved to Hong Kong and made many famous martial arts films, like Once Upon a Time in China. He later went to Hollywood and starred in a number of action films.

Sung by the shepherdess Bai Wuxia in the film, *Shepherd's Song* was much loved by the public, due to its refined melody and lyrics. Even now, many Chinese people sing this song when they go to karaoke.

#### Unit 10

### Vocabulary and listening

Doctor: Are you hurt? Here, lean on the table

and slowly sit down. Put the wounded leg up here, then remove your socks.

What seems to be the problem?

Steve: I was practising some left kicks, but my

right leg slipped and I fell.

Mark: I think he injured his ankle.

Doctor: I see. Let me take a look. Does it hurt

when I do this?

Steve: No.

Doctor: How about this?

Steve: Ah! That hurts a lot. I haven't broken

anything, have I?

**Doctor:** Don't worry, the bone is unharmed.

You've just twisted your ankle. Let me

treat that for you.

Steve: Thank you. Do you get many martial

arts-related injuries here?

Doctor: Not many. If you train in the correct way,

you won't get injured. Usually, beginners use their strength incorrectly or don't know how to hold a position in a stable manner, which makes them more susceptible to sprains. Occasionally, they even fracture

their bones, but it's not common.

Steve: Alas! I kicked much too aggressively just

now.

Mark: Yes, you have to pace yourself when

training. Don't rush things.

Steve: Yes. That's right, I often see in martial

arts films that it only takes a little bit of medicine for wounded people to recover. Is there really such effective medicine?

**Doctor:** Ha ha, that's only in the films. Some sprain

medicines are quite effective, but they can't cure someone instantaneously.

Sprains are best cured with rest and

abstaining from vigorous exercise.

Steve: How long do I have to rest for?

Doctor: At least four weeks.

Steve: So, I suppose I won't be able to learn

martial arts after all.

Mark: Focus on getting better; you can continue

training afterwards.

#### Chinese kung fu

Many people throughout the world like Chinese kung fu. They admire the brilliant movers and extreme speed displayed by kung fu actors in kung fu films; for example, the way the elite martial artists fight in the bamboo forest during a scene in *Crouching Tiger*, *Hidden Dragon*. Actually, Chinese kung fu are not just about gestures, but represent people's understanding of life and nature.

The horse stance is one of the most basic skills in Chinese kung fu. Practising the horse stance can build up strength in the legs, and also build a solid foundation for learning Chinese.

#### Let's try this together!

First, stand straight. Push out your chest and tuck in your stomach. Close your hands into fists and place them at waist level. Keep your elbows close to your torso.

Then, move your right leg one step towards the right, and move your left leg one step towards the left. The space between your feet should be around three foot widths. Your toes should point to the front.

Now, bend your legs naturally and slowly lower your body until your thighs are parallel to the ground. Watch that your knees do not extend further than your toes. Keep your back straight, look straight ahead and keep your body centred. Keep this position for five minutes, then gradually extend the period of time.

Learning reflections: The stance may seem simple, but it is difficult for beginners to do it correctly. Do not rush it. Take it slowly. When you first start practising the horse stance, keep the time period short and gradually increase it.

### Unit 11

Steve:

### Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Amanda, it's been a long time! How

have you been?

Amanda: Fine, thanks. How about you? How was

your business trip?

Steve: It was very productive. The people there

were so nice, and really helped with my work.

Amanda: That's great! But what happened to your leg?

When I came back from the Shaolin Temple, I wanted to learn some martial

arts, but twisted my ankle accidentally.

Amanda: Is it serious? Is it still painful?

Steve: It's much better now, and I can walk

with no problem. But what about you? What have you been busy working on?

Amanda: Well, my life has been rather boring

compared to yours. It's either going to class or doing homework. Though I do like this semester's elective course very much. Not only have I learnt a lot about Chinese history, my Chinese has also

improved quite a lot.

Steve: Yes, your Chinese has really improved a lot!

That's right, have you seen Wang Yu lately?

Amanda: Yes, we meet up all the time. Why?

Steve: Nothing, I'm just asking. How is she lately?

Amanda: Why do you only ask about her? Are you

in love with her?

Steve: Um... Maybe.

Amanda: Then you should tell her! Men are

supposed to take the lead!

Steve: What do you think I should do?

Amanda: Well... I think you should at least ask her out

for dinner, or a coffee. When you meet her, give her a hug and be more enthusiastic.

Steve: That's a great idea! Where do you think

is a good place to meet?

Amanda: Go somewhere romantic, of course! Buy her

some flowers or a small gift. Maybe you should give her a kiss when you say goodbye?

Steve: Well ... I think Chinese girls don't like it

to be that direct?

Amanda: Just see how it goes. Good luck!

Hi Ms Chen,

I am a second-year student at university. Recently, many of my classmates have been taking up part-time jobs and stopped asking their parents for money. I also want to earn my own living and stop relying on my parents, but part-time jobs take up a lot time and I am worried that it would affect my studies. However, some people also say that work experience is more important than what you learn in books. They also say that the knowledge you learn in class is often not very useful in society. I am very conflicted, and I can't decide if I should get a part-time job. What is your opinion, Ms Chen?

Xiao Yu from Shanghai

Hello Ms Chen,

I just graduated from university this year. I am very introverted and often don't know what to say when talking to people, especially when conversing with girls. Recently, I have fallen in love with one of my colleagues, a very nice girl. But I find it almost impossible to talk to her. Every time I see her, I can feel my heart pounding, but all I can do is pretend to be aloof. I think she now has the wrong idea about me. I feel so frustrated and I don't know what to do... This feeling is so distressing! I see no other way than asking for your advice!

Xiao Xing from Hangzhou

Dear Ms Chen,

I really like my current university life, but there is one thing that has been troubling me. Sometimes, when the parents or relatives of my friends at the dormitory come visit them, they would treat the whole dormitory to dinner. They would also bring us lots of snacks. I come from a rural area and my family is quite poor. My parents have to work very hard to earn their keep. If they come to visit me, the transportation alone will cost them a lot; therefore, I have never invited them to come to my school. Moreover, if they do visit, they probably won't treat my friends to dinner. The fact that I always enjoy these free dinners yet never return the favour is making me quite distraught. I don't know what people are saying about me behind my back. What do you think I should do, Ms Chen?

Zhang Qiang from Nanjing

### Vocabulary and listening

Steve: Wang Yu! (Steve hugs Wang Yu)

Wang Yu: Oh, Steve! What are you doing?

Steve: I'm sorry... it's just a hug, I haven't seen

you for such a long time!

Wang Yu: That's okay. But you should know that

we don't do that sort of thing.

Steve: Is that so ...? Amanda told me it's all right.

Wang Yu: I see. Let's sit down first.

Steve: This box of chocolates is for you.

Wang Yu: Thank you. Was this also Amanda's idea?

Steve: No, I know that you like chocolates.

Wang Yu: That's very kind of you. How was your

business trip?

Steve: It was wonderful! I interviewed some

very interesting people. I'll show you the

pictures another day.

Wang Yu: Sure! It seems like you enjoy being a

journalist a lot.

Steve: Yes, I love meeting all sorts of people,

visiting different places and experiencing different lifestyles. Life is always new and refreshing this way. How about you? What de you plan to do after graduation?

do you plan to do after graduation?

Wang Yu: I'm not sure yet. I really envy you for your

job because it allows you to travel all over the world. My dream job would involve music and travel. I want to go to many places in the few years after I graduate,

but I won't want to wander all my life.

Steve: Maybe after a few years, you would

want to get married and settle down?

Wang Yu: Perhaps.

Steve: I'm guessing your perfect man must be

a man who is devoted to his family and

loves music, like Yeong-min?

Wang Yu: It's hard to say. Yeong-min is a great guy,

but he is too quiet. I like liveliness and travel.

Steve: I understand. It's lonely to travel alone though. All the way on my business trip, I

have missed you... Have you missed me?

Wang Yu: We have all missed you.

Steve: I'm asking if you have missed me.

Wang Yu: Well ... I'd prefer not to answer that.

### Reading and writing

#### Tips

The following few tips can help you leave a good first impression next time you are on a date.

- 1. Be punctual, or a little early. This shows respect for the other party, and shows that you are responsible.
- Listen. Avoid talking too much about yourself, and be interested in topics that the other party is interested in.
- 3. Don't be too enthusiastic. If you are overly enthusiastic, you may scare away the other party.
- 4. Try to relax and act naturally. Everyone likes someone who is relaxed and confident.
- 5. Don't brag about your own achievements. Talking about your own achievements too much may cause others to feel that you are too proud.
- 6. Have a sense of humour. Crack a joke when the timing is right and soothe the atmosphere.
- 7. Be aware of details. Gentlemen should always open doors for ladies and ask ladies to take a seat first. Regardless of your gender, you should try to overcome some bad habits, like constantly picking up the phone at dinner.

Good luck on your first date!

#### Q&A

Q: On the first date, the two of you want to find a place to sit down for some food or beverages. Who should pick up the tab, the gentleman or the lady?

- A1: According to cultural tradition, the gentleman should pay. A man should not appear too stingy on the first date!
- A2: Gender equality is alive and well in modern society, so splitting the tab is the best way to go.
- A3: There are no rules about this. I think the gentleman could suggest that he pays, but if the lady insists, paying together is also all right.
- A4: I am a woman. If I have good feelings towards the man, I would allow him to pick up the tab. If I don't want to meet him again, I would pay for my share.
- A5: I am a man. I have just started at my first job, and my salary is not high. If I have three dates per month and it is always me who picks up the tab, I could easily go bankrupt. If a woman suggests that she should pay for her half, I would be impressed with her.

## **Vocabulary List**

	Indiana in the last									The second secon	
	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT			WORD	WORD PINYIN	WORD PINYIN PART OF SPEECH	WORD PINYIN MEANING
A	AA制	AA zhì		go Dutch, split the bill	12			本来	本来 běnlái	本来 běnlái <i>adv</i> .	本来 běnlái <i>adv.</i> originally
	哎呀	āiyā	interj.	oh (expressing	12			比方说	比方说 bǐfang shuō	比方说 bǐfang shuō n.	比方说 bǐfang shuō n. for example
				surprise) (a sighing				比如	比如 bǐrú	比如 bǐrú v.	比如 bǐrú v. take for example
	唉	àī	interj.	sound)	10			毕竟	毕竟 bijing	毕竟 bijing adv.	毕竟 bijing adv. after all
	爱好	àihào	n.	preference, hobby	1			避免	避免 bìmiǎn	避免 bìmiǎn v.	避免 bìmiǎn v. avoid
	爱情	àiqíng	n.	romantic love	9			必需品	必需品 bìxū pǐn	必需品 bìxū pǐn n.	必需品 bìxū pǐn n. necessity
	爱人	àirén	n.	spouse	6			毕业	毕业 bìyè	毕业 bìyè v.	毕业 bìyè v. graduate
	安全	ānquán	adj.	safe	6.			变化	变化 biànhuà	变化 biànhuà v.	变化 biànhuà v. change
	按	àn	prep.	according to	3			表示	表示 biǎoshì	表示 biǎoshì v.	表示 biǎoshì v. express
	按照	ànzhào	prep.	in accordance with	10			表现	表现 biǎoxiàn	表现 biǎoxiàn n.	表现 biǎoxiàn n. display, show
В	白无瑕	Bái Wúxiá		Bai Wuxia	9		7	表演	表演 biǎoyǎn	表演 biǎoyǎn v.	長演 biǎoyǎn v. perform
	百万	băiwàn	num.	million	6		别	人 .	人 biérèn	人 biérèn n.	人 biérèn n. other people, others
	搬	bān	v.	move	4		并		bìng	bìng <i>conj</i> .	
	办法	bànfǎ	n.	way, means	11		并	不	下 bìng bù	不 bìng bù	下 bìng bù not really
	办公室	bàngōngshì	n.	office	1		拨打		bōdǎ	bōdă <i>v</i> .	bōdἄ <i>ν</i> . dial
	伴侣	bànlŭ	n.	spouse, life	12		博士		bóshì	bóshì <i>n</i> .	bóshì <i>n</i> . PhD
	N			partner			不必		búbì	búbì adv.	búbì adv. no need
	扮演	bànyăn	V.	play (a role)	3		步		bù	bù <i>n</i> .	bù n. step
	扮演者帮忙	bànyánzhě bāngmáng	n.	actor, performer help	2		部		bù	bù measure	All the second s
			V.	fine, excellent,						wora	word IV series)
	棒	bàng	adj.	fantastic	12		不管		bùguăn	bùguǎn <i>conj</i> .	bùguǎn conj. despite
	包括	bāokuò	v.	include	4		不好说		bù hắo shuō	bù hắo shuō	bù hắo shuỗ hard to say
	保持	băochí	V.	maintain	10		不如		bùrú	bùrú <i>conj</i> .	bùrú <i>conj.</i> why not
	报仇	bàochóu	v.	take revenge	9		不是而		bùshì		
	报名	bàomíng	v.	register, enter for	1		是		érshì	érshì n.	
	抱歉	bàoqiàn	V.	be sorry	6		不小心		bù xiǎoxīn	bù xiǎoxīn	bù xiǎoxīn by accident
	暴风雪	bàofēngxuě	n.	snowstorm	5	C	擦		cā	cā v.	cā v. spread on, apply
	背后	bèihòu	n.	back	11				-X:EX	XieX	interview (for
	本	běn	pron.	this	5		采访		căifăng	căifăng v.	media)
	本地人	běndìrén	n.	local	7		参军		cānjūn	cānjūn v.	cānjūn v. join the military
											Vocabulary list

								**	
WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
舱	cāng	n.	cabin	5	处理	chŭlĭ	V.	treat, deal with	10
操场	cāochǎng	n.	playground	7	穿插	chuānchā	v.	interweave	9
嘈杂	cáozá	adj.	noisy	7	船队	chuánduì	n.	fleet	4
草原	căoyuán	n.	grassland	6	传说	chuánshuō	n.	legend	4
测验	cèyàn	v.	test	3	传送带	chuánsòngdài	n.	conveyor belt	5
层	céng	measure word	floor	2	传统	chuántŏng	adj.	traditional	1
常常	chángcháng		often,	7	窗户	chuānghu	n.	window	5
			frequently		次数	cìshù	n.	number of times	8
场面	chăngmiàn	n.	scene	10	从小	cóngxiǎo	adv.	since childhood	7
超过	chāoguò	V.	exceed, surpass	5 D	打败	dăbài	V.	defeat	9
超重	chāozhòng	v	overweigh	5	打斗	dădòu	v.	fight	10
助士	chǎo	adj.	noisy	3	打交道	dă jiāodào		deal with	12
陈寿	Chén Shòu		Chen Shou	2	打拳	dăquán	v.	practise boxing	
成功	chénggōng	adj.	successful	4	打扫	dăsăo	v.	clean up	6
成吉思	Chéngjísīhán		Genghis Khan	3	大多数	dàduōshù		most of the	
成绩	chéngjì	n.	result (of a test)	1	时候	shíhou		time	1
成就	chéngjiù	n.	achievement	12	大方	dàfang	adj.	natural, tasteful, generous	12
成为	chéngwéi	v.	become	4	大概	dàgài	adv.	probably	11
乘坐	chéngzuò	v.	take, ride	5	大量	dàliàng	adj.	a large amount	8
持续	chíxù	v.	last	5	大青沟	Dàqinggōu	n.	Daqinggou	8
充实	chōngshí	adj.	full, substantial	7	代表	dàibiǎo	v.	represent	10
仇人	chóurén	n.	foe, enemy	9	大夫	dàifu	n.	doctor	10
出差	chūchāi	v.	business trip	11	代替	dàitì	v.	replace	4
出海	chūhǎi	v.	go to sea	4	担心	dānxīn	v.	worry about	1
出家	chūjiā	v.	become a monk /nun	9	刀尖	dāojiān	n.	knife/sword point	9
出示	chūshì	v.	show	5	到处	dàochù	adv.	everywhere	12
出现	chūxiàn	v.	appear	5	道路	dàolù	n.	road	5
出主意	chū zhǔyi		come up with an idea	3	到位	dàowèi	adj.	in the right position	10
初步	chūbù	adj.	preliminary	1	得到	dédào	V	get	8
初次	chūcì	n.	first time	12	得	děi	V.	have to	1
初学者	chūxuézhě	n.	beginner	2	的确	díquè	adv.	indeed	7

	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
	登机	dēngjī	v	board (a plane)	5	烦恼	fánnăo	adj.	worried	11
	登机口	dēngjīkŏu	n.	boarding gate	5	范围	fànwéi	n.	range	5
	登机牌	dēngjīpái	n.	boarding pass	5	方法	fāngfă	n.	method	1
	敌人	dírén	n.	foe, enemy	9	方面	fāngmiàn	n.	area, aspect	2
	迪士尼	Dishini	n.	Disney	4.	防护栏	fánghùlán	n.	fence	8
	地面	dìmiàn	n.	ground	10	防止	fángzhĭ	v.	prevent	8
	地图	dìtú	n.	map	9	放牧	fàngmù	v.	graze	8
	电视剧	diànshìjù	n.	TV drama	4	放松	fàngsōng	v.	relax	12
	电梯	diàntī	n.	elevator, lift	2	放心	fàngxīn	v.	rest assured	10
	跌倒	diēdǎo	V.	fall down	10	非洲	Fēizhōu	n.	Africa	4
	订票	dìngpiào	v.	book tickets	5	粉笔	fěnbĭ	n.	chalk	7
	东北东奔西	Döngběi	n.	northeast	8	份	fèn	measure word	share	12
	走	dōngbēn-xī zŏu		bustle about	12	丰富	fēngfù	adj.	rich	2
	东南亚	Dōngnányà	n.	Southeast Asia	4	风力	fēnglì	n.	wind force	5
	动作	dòngzuò	n.	movement	9	扶	fú	v.	prop up, support	10
	独生女	dúshēngnŭ	n.	single child (girl)	6	付	fù	v.	pay	12
	读书	dúshū	v.	go to school	4	公县	fùmǔ		father and morther,	10
	段	duàn	measure word	period (of time)	11	父母		n.	parents	10
	锻炼	duànliàn	v.	build up	9	父亲	fùqin	n.	father	4
	对方	duìfāng	n.	the other party	12	负责人	fùzérén	n.	director, person in charge	8
	对来说	duìláishuō	n.	to/for (someone)	2	复印机	fùyìnjī	n.	photocopier	2
	蹲	dūn	V.	squat	10		găibiàn	V.	change	8
	多么	duōme	adv.	how, what	9	改善	găishàn	V.	improve	8
	二胡	èrhú	n.	erhu	1	改天	găitiān	adv.	another day	12
i	发达	fādá	adj.	developed	7	概况	gàikuàng	n.	general introduction	1
	发短信	fā duănxìn		send text messages	3	概念	gàiniàn	n.	concept	3
	发生	fāshēng	v.	take place, happen	9	干刚	gàn gāng	v. adv.	do, perform just, just now	12
	发音	fāyīn	v.	pronunciation	6	高楼大	gāolóu		high-rises,	
	发展	fāzhǎn	v.	develop	1	厦	dàshà		skyscrapers	7
	法律	fălû	n.	law	2	高手	gāoshŏu	n.	master	10

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
告别	gàobié	V.	say goodbye	11	过敏	guòmĭn	v	be allergic to	4
歌词	gēcí	n.	lyrics	9 🖽	孩子	háizi	n.	child	7
个人	gèrén	n.	personal	6	害羞	hàixiū	v.	shy	6
各种各样	gèzhŏng-gè yàng		all kinds of	12	汉朝	Hàncháo	n.	Han dynasty	2
跟	79				汉字	hànzì	n.	Chinese character	1
比起来	gēnbĭ qĭla		compared with	11	航班	hángbān	n.	flight	5
根据	gēnjù	prep.	according to	1	航海家	hánghǎijiā	n.	navigator, seafarer	3
更替	gēngtì	V.	replacement	2	航海图	hánghăitú	n.	nautical chart	4
工程	gōngchéng	n.	engineering	8	杭州	Hángzhōu	n.	Hangzhou	11
功夫	gōngfu	n.	kung fu	1	航空公	hángkōng			
工具书	gōngjùshū	n.	dictionary, reference	1	司	gōngsī		airlines	5
	3 33		book		好处	hăochu	n.	benefit	1
工艺品	gōngyìpǐn	n.	arts and crafts	3	好像	hǎoxiàng	adv.	seem to	6
工资	gōngzī	n.	salary	7	好运	hǎoyùn	n.	good luck	11
估计	gūjì	V.	estimate, reckon	12	合适	héshì	adj.	suitable	2
古代	gŭdài	adj.	ancient	1	河北	Héběi	n.	Hebei	5
骨头	gŭtou	n.	bone	10	河南	Hénán	n.	Henan	9
古文	gŭwén	n.	classical Chinese	1	盒	hé	n.	box	12
骨折	gŭzhé	v.	bone fracture	10	黑板	hēibǎn	n.	blackboard	7
顾家	gùjiā	v.	care about one's family	12	厚	hòu	adj.	thick	2
刮风	guā fēng		blow (wind)	8	后背	hòubèi	n.	back of the body	10
关闭	guānbì	v.	close	5	呼和浩	Hũ hé hào			-
关于	guānyú	prep.	about	2	特	tè	n.	Hohhot	5
光	guāng	adv.	merely, only	9	互联网	hùliánwăng	n.	Internet	7
规定	guīdìng	n.	rule	12	花	huā	V.	spend	1
国家	guójiā	n.	country	4	华北	Huáběi	n.	North China	5
过程	guòchéng	n.	process	1	话题	huàtí	n.	topic	12
过道	guòdào	n.	aisle	5	画线	huàxiàn	v.	draw a line	3
过度	guòdù	adj.	excessive, over	8	还	huán	V.	return	2
过多	guòduō		too much	12	环境	huánjìng	n.	environment	7
过分	guòfèn	adj.	overdoing	12	还原	huányuán	v.	return to the original state	8
过奖	guòjiăng	v.	flatter	6	换	huàn	V.	change	6

	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	WORD PINYIN	WORD PINYIN PART OF SPEECH	
	皇帝	huángdì	n.	emperor	2		简要	简要 jiǎnyào	简要 jiǎnyào <i>adj.</i>	简要 jiǎnyào <i>adj.</i> brief and to the point
	黄帝	Huángdì	n.	Yellow Emperor	3		建议	建议 jiànyì	建议 jiànyì <i>n./v.</i>	建议 jiànyì n/v suggestion;
	恢复	huīfù	V.	recover	8		降雪			Suggest
	回头见	huítóu jiàn		see you later	3		教			
	活动	huódòng	n.	activity	3					
	活动	huódòng	V.	stay active	10		骄傲			新版 Jido do daj. proud
	活泼	huópō	adj.	lively	7		交流			
	获救	huòjiù	v.	get saved	9		脚			
J	基本	jīběn	adj.	basic	1	脚踝	2	jiǎohuái	jiǎohuái <i>n</i> .	jiǎohuái <i>n.</i> ankle
	基本功	jīběngōng	n.	basic skill	10	脚尖		jiǎojiān	jiǎojiān <i>n</i> .	jiǎojiān n. tip of the toes
	基础	jīchǔ	n.	foundation	1	教材		jiàocái	jiàocái <i>n</i> .	jiàocái n. textbook
	几乎	jīhū	adv.	almost	11	教师		jiàoshī	jiàoshī <i>n</i> .	jiàoshī n. teacher
	机会	jīhuì	n.	opportunity	1	教学		jiàoxué	jiàoxué <i>n</i> .	jiàoxué n. teaching and learning
	肌肉	jīròu	n.	muscle	9	教育		jiàoyù	jiàoyù <i>n</i> .	
	极	jí	adv.	extremely	10	接		jiē	jiē v.	jiē v. pick up
	吉林	Jilin	n.	Jilin	6	接受		jiēshòu	jiēshòu <i>v</i> .	jiēshòu v. accept, take
	及时.	jíshí	adv.	in time	5	街道		jiēdào	jiēdào <i>n</i> .	
	记得	jìde	v.	remember	7	接下来		- Constitution of the cons		
	继续	jìxù	v.	continue	4	结果		jiéguŏ		
	既	jìyòu,	conj.	both and	. 12	结婚		jiéhūn	jiéhūn v.	jiéhūn v. get married
	又					结束		jiéshù	jiéshù v.	
	寂寞	jìmò	adj.	lonely	12 10	解释		jiěshì	jiěshì <i>v</i> .	jiěshì v. explain
	加强	jiāqiáng	v. n.	California	4	借住		jilèzhù	jièzhù v.	stay at sb else's place
	假扮	jiǎbàn	V.	disguise	4	紧贴		jĭntiē	jĭntiē <i>v</i> .	
				oneself as		紧张		jĭnzhāng	jĭnzhāng <i>adj</i> .	jĭnzhāng <i>adj.</i> intense
	假装	jiǎzhuāng	V.	pretend	11	尽量		jĭnliàng	jĭnliàng <i>adv.</i>	jĭnliàng adv. to one's best
	架价值	jià jiàzhí	n.	rack value	2 7	进步		jìnbù	jìnbù v.	jìnbù v. make progress,
	坚持	jiānchí	v.	insist	12	进行		jìnxíng		Improve
	1 符答	jiǎndá	n.	short answer	3			3.50	3.5a.	
						精彩		jīngcăi		- W - W
	简単	jiǎndān	adj.	simple, easy	1	经典		jīngdiǎn		
	减少	jiǎnshǎo	V.	reduce	8	经过		jīngguò	jīngguò <i>v</i> .	jīngguò v. pass by

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	PINYIN	PART OF	MEANING	UN
		SPEECH	Beijing and			课堂讨		SPEECH	and the state of t	
京津	Jīng-Jīn		Tianjin	8		<b>於</b> 至內	kètáng tǎolùn		classroom discussion	1
精神	jīngshén	n.	spirit	7		肯定	kěndìng	v.	confirm	4
经验	jīngyàn	n.	experience	11		空调	kōngtiáo	n.	air conditioner	6
警察	jĭngchá	n.	police	5		空虚	kōngxū	adj.	empty, void	7
旧金山	Jiùjīnshān	n.	San Francisco	4		恐怕	kŏngpà	adv.	for fear of	2
就算	jiùsuànyě		even if	11		控制	kòngzhì	v.	control	8
也	Jiaodaiiyo		evenii	AU US		口试	kŏushì	v.	oral test	1
举	jŭ	V.	lift, raise	9		口音	kŏuyīn	n.	accent	6
举止	jŭzhĭ	n.	manner	12		枯燥	kūzào	adj.	boring	1
句	jù	measure word	sentence	9		苦练	kŭliàn	V.	practise hard	9
距离	jùlí	n.	distance	10		跨	kuà	v.	step, stride	10
具体	jùtĭ	adj.	specific	2		狂	kuáng	adj.	crazy	1
决定	juédìng	V.	decide	3		扩大	kuòdà	v.	expand	8
决心	juéxīn		determination	9		垃圾桶	lājītŏng	n.	rubbish bin	(
	Juexiii	n.	determination	9		拉伤	lāshāng		strain	1
卡拉 OK厅	kălā 0K tīng	n.	Karaoke bar	9		浪漫	làngmàn	V.	romantic	
开发	kāifā	v.	develop	8		老	lăo	adj.		1
看法	kànfă	n.	opinion	4				adv.	always	1
看见	kànjiàn	V.	see	3		老话	lăohuà	n.	old saying	9
		2 Shirth	do as one sees			类	lèi	n.	kind, genre	2
看着办	kànzhe bàn		fit	11		冷淡	lěngdàn	adj.	cold (in manner)	
靠	kào	v.	by the side of, lean against	5		理解	lĭjiě	V.	understand	10
科尔沁	Kë' ĕrqin	n.	Horqin	8		李连杰	Lǐ Liánjié		Jet Li	9
			science and			礼貌	lĭmào	adj.	polite	6
科技	kējì	n.	technology	7		礼物	lĭwù	n.	gift	1
可靠	kěkào	adj.	reliable	12		理想	lĭxiǎng	adj.	ideal	1.
可是	kěshì	conj.	but	4	,	厉害	lìhai	adj.	powerful	9
可惜	kěxī	adj.	it is a pity	6		力气	lìqi	n.	strength	9
克服	kèfú	v.	overcome	12	7	利用	lìyòng	V.	make use of	1
课间	kèjiān	n.	break (between	7	j	连	lián	v.	connect	3
			classes)		3	练功	liàngōng	v.	practise kung fu	9
客气	kèqi	adj.	polite, courteous	6	3	练习	liànxí	v.	practise	10
客人	kèrén	n.	guest	6	J	聊	liáo	V.	chat	6

i										1	
	WORD		PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNI
	聊天	liáotiān	v.	chat	6		耐心	nàixīn	n.	patience	1
	辽宁	Liáoning	n.	Liaoning	6		难道	nándào	adv.	(used to reinforce a rhetori-	17
	了不起	liăobuqĭ	adj.	great, amazing	8		<b>准</b> 垣	Handao	uuv.	cal question)	12
-	林业局	línyè jú		bureau of forestry	8		难过	nánguò	adj.	upset	11
	灵感	línggăn	n.	inspiration	9		南京	nánjing	n.	Nanjing	11
	零食	língshí	n.	snack	11		难受	nánshòu	adj.	(feel) bad, embarrassed	1
	留	liú	v.	leave	12		内蒙古	Nèiměnggů	n	Inner	5
	路费	lùfèi	n.	travelling	11				n.	Mongolia	
	- N			expenses			内容	nèiróng	n.	content	1
	旅途愉快	lŭtú yúkuài		have a pleasant journey	5		内向	nèixiàng	adj.	introverted	11
	律师	lùshī	n.	lawyer	6		嗯	'ng	interj.	(expressing agreement)	9
	落后	luòhòu	adj.	underdevel-			年级	niánjí	n.	grade	4
,	俗石	laonoa	auj.	oped, backward	7		扭	niŭ	v.	sprain	10
	马步	măbù	n.	horse-riding stance	9		农村	nóngcūn	n.	rural area, countryside	1
	忙个不 停	mángge bùtíng		like to keep busy	6		女儿	nŭ' ér	n.	daughter	4
				conflict;			女士	năshì	n.	Ms	1
-	矛盾	máodùn	n./adj.	conflicting	11	P	排列	páiliè	V.	arrange, order	3
,	茂盛	màoshèng	adj.	flourishing (of plants)	8		排序	páixù	v.	order	3
1	贸易	màoyì	n.	trade	4		排演	páiyǎn	v.	rehearse	3
-	每当	měidāng	prep.	every time	11		篇	piān	measure word	piece	6
	美丽	měilì	adj.	beautiful	9		偏远地	piānyuǎn	Word		
	美术	měishù	n.	arts	7		区	dìqū		remote area	7
1	面积	miànjī	n.	area	8		票房	piàofáng	n.	box office	9
F	明白	míngbái	v.	understand	6		平等	píngděng	adj.	equal	1.
,	名称	míngchēng	n.	name	1	- 59	评估	pínggū	v.	assess	1
E	明显	míngxiǎn	adj.	obvious	8		平时表	píngshí		regular class	1
	某	mŏu	pron.	certain, some	2		现	biăoxiàn		performance	
1	目的	mùdì	n.	purpose	1		平行	pingxing	adj.	parallel	1(
4	牧羊女	mùyángnă	n.	shepherdess	9		破产	pòchǎn	V.	go broke	12
	拿	náláishuō		take for	9		破坏	pòhuài	V.	destroy	8
3	来说			example		,	破坏力	pòhuàilì	n.	destructive power	8
17	耐力	nàilì	n.	stamina, endurance	9	Q.	妻子	qīzi	n.	wife	4

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
期刊室	qīkānshì	n.	periodical reading room	2	拳法	quánfă	n.	boxing	4
期末	qīmò	n.	end of the	1	缺点	quēdiăn	n.	shortcoming, weakness	2
其次	qícì	pron.	semester	8	缺少	quēshǎo	V.	lack of	7
奇怪	qíguài	adj.	strange	6	却	què	adv.	but, yet	11
			as a matter of		确实	quèshí	adv.	indeed	1
其实	qíshí	adv.	fact	6 R	热爱	rè' ài	v.	have a deep love for	4
起飞	qĭfēi	v.	take off	5		\ 1.4		enthusiasm,	•
起作用	qǐ zuòyòng		take effect	8	热潮	rècháo	n.	mass fervour	9
气氛	qìfēn	n.	atmosphere	12	热情	rèqing	adj.	hospitable	6
气候	qìhòu	n.	climate	8	热线	rèxiàn	n.	hotline	5
气象	qìxiàng	n.	weather		人类	rénlèi	n.	human being	8
千万	qiānwàn	adv.	be sure to, must	10	人为	rénwéi	adj.	artificial, man- made	8
前面	qiánmiàn	n.	in the front	3	人物	rénwù	n.	figure	3
前排	qiánpái	n.	front row	3	认为	rènwéi	V.	think, believe	4
欠	qiàn	V.	owe	12	认真	rènzhēn	adj.	earnest	7
强烈	qiángliè	adj	stong, intense	2	任务	rènwu	n.	task	8
巧克力	qiǎokèlì	n.	chocolate	12	仍	réng	adv.	still	5
亲戚	qīnqi	n.	relative	11	入门	rùmén	n.	primer	2
清楚	qīngchu	adj.	clear	3				be fascinated	
青蜂	qīngfēngxiá		The Green	4	入迷	rùmí	V.	by, fall for	2
侠》			Hornet	S	《三国	Sănguózhì		Records of the Three	2
轻松	qīngsōng	adj.	light, relaxed	7	志》			Kingdoms	
倾听	qīngtīng	V.	listen attentively	12	扫地	săodì	v.	sweep the floor	6
情况	qíngkuàng	n.	situation	8	僧人	sēngrén	n.	monk	9
请客	qĭngkè	V.	invite sb to dinner	11	杀	shā	V.	kill	9
穷	qióng	adj.	poor	11	沙尘暴	shāchénbào	n.	sandstorm	8
求助	qiúzhù	v.	ask for help	11	沙地	shādì		desert	8
区别	qūbié	n.	difference	1	晒	shài	v.	line dry (clothes)	6
取	qŭ	V.	pick up	5	山西	Shānxī	n.	Shanxi	5
曲调	qŭdiào	n.	melody	9	伤	shāng		hurt	10
取消	qŭxiāo	V.	cancel	5	商务写	shāngwù		business	
去世	qùshì	v.	pass away	4	作	xiězuò		writing	1

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF	ANTANIAG		Wana	B1115/00	PART OF		
		SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
上演	shàngyăn	v.	release, play	4	首先	shŏuxiān	conj.	first of all	4
上映	shàngyìng	V.	release (a film)	9	受不了	shòubuliǎo	V.	cannot bear	5
少数民族	shǎoshù mínzú		ethnic minority	6	受伤	shòushāng	v.	get hurt	9
少林寺	Shàolinsi		Shaolin Temple	9	书法	shūfă	n.	calligraphy	1
社会	shèhuì	n.	society	11	书籍	shūjí	n.	books	2
设施	shèshī	n.	facilities	7	书目	shūmù	n.	references	2
身份	shēnfèn	n.	identity	3	书评	shūping	n.	book review	2
神奇	shénqí	adj.	magic	10	熟	shú	adj.	familiar, acquainted	7
甚至	shènzhì	conj.	even	4.	束	shù	measure	bunch	11
生活方	shēnghuó						word		
式	fāngshì	n.	lifestyle	7	树立	shùlì	V.	erect	8
生活费	shēnghuófèi	n.	living expenses	11	数据	shùjù	n.	data	8
生命	shēngming	n.	life	10	水平	shuĭpíng	n.	level	1
生平	shēngping	n.	life story	4	顺利.	shùnlì	adj.	go well, smooth	6
生态	shēngtài	n.	ecology	8	顺序	shùnxù	n.	order	3
省	shěng	n.	province	6	说法	shuōfa	n.	statement	3
诗人	shīrén	n.	poet	3	说明	shuōming	v.	elaborate	3
// do 22 \\	Ziu Yes		Records of		司马迁	Sīmă Qiān		Sima Qian	2
《史记》	shĭjì		the Grand Historian	2	丝绸之路	sīchóu zhī lù		the Silk Road	3
史前	shǐqián	n.	prehistory	2				thought,	
使用	shĭyòng	v.	make use of	1	思想	sīxiǎng	n.	ideology	3
适合	shìhé	v.	suit	2	《死亡	Sĭwángyóuxì		Game of Death	4
世纪	shìjì	n.	century	2	游戏》			Songshan	
世界	shìjiè	n.	world	4	嵩山	Sõng Shān		Mountain	9
市区	shìqū	n.	city area	5	速度	sùdù	v.	speed	10
收获	shōuhuò	n.	harvest, gain	11	算	suàn	V.	count	4
收入	shōurù	n.	income	6	随便	suíbiàn	adj.	casual	11
收拾	shōushi	v.	clean up	3	隋朝	Suícháo		Sui Dynasty	9
手臂	shǒubì	n.	arm	9	随身行李	suíshēn xíngli		carry-on	5
守纪律	shǒu jìlù		disciplined	7	子《孙子	Alligii		luggage	
手续	shŏuxù	n.	procedure	5	兵法》	Sūnzĭ bīngfă	n.	The Art of War	3
首都	shŏudū	n.	capital	5	抬	tái	V.	raise	10

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT		WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
太极拳	tàijíquán	n.	tai chi	4		脱	tuō	v.	take off	10
谈论	tánlùn	V.	talk about	12		托运	tuōyùn	v.	check in (luggage)	5
躺	tăng	v	lie	9	W	袜子	wàzi	n.	socks	10
讨论	tăolùn	V.	discuss	3		外在	wàizài	adj.	outside, exterior	
疼	téng	V.	ache	10		弯曲	wānqū	V.	bend	10
提出	tíchū	v.	propose, bring up	12		网络	wăngluò	n.	Internet	2
提高	tígāo	v.	improve	1		往往	wăngwăng	adv.	more often	10
提前	tíqián	V.	advance, bring forward	12		为了	wèile		than not for the purose	4
题目	tímù	n.	title, topic .	3			welle	prep.	of	4
体验	tĭyàn	v.	experience	12		为 提供	wèitígōng		provide with	8
体育	tĭyù	n.	physical education	7		文化	wénhuà	n.	culture	1
替身	tìshēn	n.	stunt man/ woman	9		文字	wénzì	n.	wording, writing	2
天津	Tiānjīn	n.	Tianjin	5		闻名	wénming	v.	famous, renowned	9
条件	tiáojiàn	n.	condition	6		吻	wěn	V.	kiss	11
跳	tiào	v.	jump, beat	11		稳	wěn	adj.	steady	10
听起来	tīng qĭlai	n.	sounds like	1		稳定	wěndìng	adj./v.	stable,	12
挺	tĭng	adv.	very, rather	1			wonding	auj., v.	stabilize	12
挺胸收腹	tĭngxiōng shōufù		chest out, stomach in	10		《卧虎藏龙》	Wò-hǔ Cáng- lóng	n.	Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon	10
通辽	Tōngliáo	n.	Tongliao	5		握拳	wòquán	v.	make a fist	10
同事	tóngshì	n.	colleague	8		无论				
同意	tóngyì	v.	agree	4		都	wúlùndōu	conj.	no matter what	9
头	tóu	adj.	first	12		武术	wŭshù	n.	martial arts	1
头顶	tóudĭng	n.	top of the head	9					martial arts	
图片	túpiàn	n.	picture, illustration	2		武术家	wŭshùjiā	n.	master	4
图书管理员	túshū guănl yuán	ĭ	librarian	2		误会西晋	wùhuì Xĩ Jin	v.	misunderstand West Jin	2
图说	túshuō	n.	illustrated	2		膝盖	xīgài	n.	knee	10
			book			<b></b> 四洋	Xīyáng		West	4
土地	tǔdì	n.	land, soil	8		吸引人	xīyĭn rén	n.		
推荐	tuījiàn	V.	recommend	2					attractive	2
腿	tuĭ	n.	leg	9		习惯	xíguàn	v.	get used to	6

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
洗碗	xĭwăn		wash dishes	6	压力	yālì	n.	pressure	7
细节	xìjié	n.	detail	12	延误	yánwù	v.	delay	5
戏剧	xìjù	n.	drama	3	严重	yánzhòng	adj.	severe	8
PF.	xià	v.	scare	12	演出	yănchū	n.	performance	3
下列	xiàliè	n.	following	3	演奏	yănzòu	V.	play	1
鲜花	xiānhuā	n.	fresh flower	11	腰部	yāobù	n.	waist area	10
显得	xiǎnde	v.	look, seem	12	邀请	yāoqĭng	v.	invite	11
现代	xiàndài	n.	modern	1	要求	yāoqiú	n.	requirement	1
羡慕	xiànmù	v.	envy	12	遥控器	yáokòngqì	n.	remote control	6
相关	xiāngguān	v.	relevant	3.	药物	yàowù	n.	drug, medication	4
项目	xiàngmù	n.	programme, project	8	要不然	yàoburán	adv.	otherwise	6
小气	xiǎoqi	adj.	cheap, miserly	12	要是	yàoshì	conj.	if	2
小组	xiǎozǔ	n.	group	1	也许	yěxů	adv.	perhaps	12
效果	xiàoguŏ	n.	effect	10	业余时	yèyú shíjiār	1	spare time	11
校长	xiàozhǎng	n.	headmaster	6	间	yeya sinjiai	•//	spare time	
NO.	xīn	n.	heart	11	依靠	yīkào	V.	rely on	7
辛苦	xīnkŭ	v.	go to great trouble	6	一辈子	yíbèizi	n.	all one's life	12
àc il		76	newly born,		移居	yíjū	V.	migrate	9
新生	xīnshēng	adj.	newly grown	8	遗作	yízuò	n.	posthumous work	4
新闻	xīnwén	n.	news	5	以前	yĭqián	n.	before	3
新鲜感	xīnxiāngăn	n.	sense of novelty	12	以 为例	yĭwéilì		take for	8
信用卡	xìnyòngkă	n.	credit card	5	为例	yıvveiii		example	0
形成	xíngchéng	V.	form	8	以 著称	yĭ zhùchēng		famous for	3
行李票	xíngli piào	n.	luggage ticket	5	有 特子	yĭzi		chair	6
形式	xíngshì	n.	form, formality	10	一般	yìbān	n. adj.	general	10
幸好	xìnghǎo	adv.	fortunately	6	一样成		uuj.		10
修炼	xiūliàn	v.	practise austerities	9	名名	yìjǔ-chéng míng		gain instant fame	4
许多	xŭduō	num.	many	9	毅力	yìlì	n.	perseverance	9
选	xuăn	v.	elect, choose	1	艺术	yìshù	n.	art	2
选修课	xuǎnxiūkè	n.	elective course	1	意味着	yìwèizhe		mean, signify	8
选择	xuănzé	V.	choose	3	意义	yìyì	n.	significance	3
炫耀	xuànyào	V.	show off	12	一直	yìzhí	adv.	all along	2

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT	WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
引起	yĭnqĭ	V.	give rise to	9	原因	yuányīn	n.	reason	7
隐私	yĭnsī	n.	privacy	6	愿意	yuànyì	V.	be willing	7
印度	yîndû	n.	India	4	约	yuē	V.	invite, date	11
印象	yìnxiàng	n.	impression	12	约会	yuēhuì	n.	date	12
英雄	yīngxióng	n.	hero	4	约时间	yuē shíjiān		arrange a time	3
影片	yĭngpiàn	n.	film	9	阅读	yuèdú	V.	read	1
拥抱	yōngbào	v.	hug	11	粤剧	yuèjù	n.	Cantonese opera	4
咏春拳	yŏngchūn quán	n.	Wing-chun	4	乐器	yuèqì	n.	musical instrument	1
用词	yòngcí	n.	wording, phrasing	6 🛮	再说	zàishuō	conj.	in addition	1
用力	yònglì	v.	put forth one's	10	造成	zàochéng	v.	cause	5
			strength		增加	zēngjiā	v.	increase	9
优点	yōudiǎn	n.	strength, pros	2	站	zhàn	v.	stand	10
优美	yōuměi	adj.	beautiful (story, song, etc.)	9	战争	zhànzhēng	n.	war	2
优秀	yōuxiù	adj.	excellent	11	长大	zhăngdà	v.	grow up	7
幽默感	yōumògăn	n.	sense of humour	12	掌握	zhăngwò	V.	master	1
尤其	yóuqí	adv.	especially	11	招	zhāo	measure word	move	9
由	yóu	prep.	through, via	5	着急	zháojí	V.	worried,	11
由于	yóuyú	prep./conj.	due to	4	折磨	zhémó	V.	concerned torture	11
有道理	yŏu dàolĭ		reasonable	4	哲学	zhéxué	n.	philosophy	2
有关	yŏuguān	V.	be related	1	哲学家	zhéxuéjiā	n.	philosopher	3
有意思	yŏuyìsi		interesting	1	真实	zhēnshí	adj.	true	4
有志者,	yǒu zhì zhě shì jìng		where there's a will, there's a	9	正确	zhèngquè	adj.	correct	3
事竟成	chéng		way		支持	zhīchí	v.	support	11
与	yŭ	prep.	with	3	只好	zhĭhǎo	adv.	have to	11
语法	yŭfă	n.	grammar	1	之间	zhījiān	n.	between	10
语文	yŭwén	n.	language, language arts	7	知识	zhīshi	n.	knowledge	1
语言	yŭyán	n.	language	1	直	zhí	adj.	straight	10
预报	yùbào	n./v.	forecast	5	直到	zhídào	v.	until	10
浴室	yùshì	n.	bathroom	6	值得	zhídé	V.	worth	4
源	yuán	n.	source	8	值机员	zhíjīyuán	n.	check-in staff	5
原来	yuánlái	n.	original	8	直接	zhíjiē	adj.	direct	11
800 80			276		animono de la constanta de la		76/4		

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
职业	zhíyè	n.	profession	6
职业学校	zhíyè xué xiào		vocational school	4
植被	zhíbèi	n.	vegetation	8
指挥	zhǐhuī	V.	direct	5
治理	zhìlĭ	v.	harness, bring under control	8
至少	zhìshǎo	adv.	at least	11
中级	zhōngjí	adj.	intermediate	1
中间	zhōngjiān	n.	middle	10
中心	zhōngxīn	n.	centre	3.
中央气象台	Zhōngyāng Qìxiàngtái	n.	National Meteorological Centre	5
重点	zhòngdiǎn	n.	emphasis	1
重视	zhòngshì	v.	attach importance to	7
种树	zhòng shù		plant trees	8
重物	zhòngwù		heavy thing	9
重心	zhòngxīn	n.	centre of gravity	10
种植	zhòngzhí	v.	plant	8
周到	zhōudào	adj.	considerate	6
周围	zhōuwéi	n.	surroudings	5
肘	zhŏu	n.	elbow	10
逐渐	zhújiàn	adv.	gradually	8
竹林	zhúlín	n.	bamboo forest	10
主动	zhŭdòng	adj.	on one's own initiative	11

WORD	PINYIN	PART OF SPEECH	MEANING	UNIT
主演	zhǔyǎn	v.	play the leading role	4
主要	zhǔyào	adj.	main, major	5
著名	zhùming	adj.	famous	4
转机	zhuănjī	v.	transfer (flight)	5
赚	zhuàn	v.	earn	6
追	zhuī	v.	chase, run after	9
准时	zhŭnshí	adj.	punctual, on time	12
自创	zìchuàng	V.	create by oneself	4
姿势	zīshì	n.	posture, pose	10
宗教	zōngjiào	n.	religion	2
总工程 师	zŏnggōng chéngshī		chief engineer	8
走访	zŏufăng	v.	pay a visit to	7
阻止	zŭzhĭ	v.	stop, prevent	8
最好	zuìhǎo	adj.	best	12
尊重	zūnzhòng	v.	respect	7
左转	zuŏ zhuăn	V.	turn left	2
座	zuò	measure word	(for immovable objects)	9
做饭	zuòfàn	v.	cook	6
座位	zuòwèi	n.	seat	5
作用	zuòyòng	n.	effect, function	8
作者	zuòzhě	n.	author	2

# Discover China

### STUDENT'S BOOK THREE 学生用书3

No one could claim that learning Chinese is easy. Discover China recognizes the challenges that face students of the Chinese language and applies teaching and learning approaches to make learning effective, meaningful and enjoyable.

Discover China is a four-level Mandarin Chinese course specially designed for beginner to intermediate level students and employs a communicative approach to language learning. Emphasis is placed on pair work, group work and on a wide variety of speaking and listening activities to help students become confident Chinese language speakers.

- A communicative approach lets students learn by using the language in real-life situations, providing them with the tools they need to communicate in Chinese naturally
- Language in context presents key vocabulary and language points in situations where students will encounter them in real life
- Structured, effective learning based on the sequence 'presentation, practice and production' has activities move from controlled practice to personalized tasks, which facilitates effective learning of the language
- Inductive grammar teaching encourages students to discover the language rules of Chinese for themselves by identifying the patterns in targeted language samples
- Systematic vocabulary and grammar development through topic-based practice and extension exercises. The lexical syllabus is based on levels 1-4 of the HSK Proficiency Test and the grammatical syllabus takes students up to the Vantage level (level B2) of the Common European Framework
- Supported by free online resources including teacher's books, assessment tasks, unit quizzes and extra character writing sheets — the support materials allow both teacher-guided learning in the classroom and self-teaching at a pace suited to the individual student

Components of Discover China levels 1, 2, 3 and 4:

- Comprehensive Student's Book + Audio CD
- Workbook + Audio CD
- Supportive resource website: www.mydiscoverchina.com

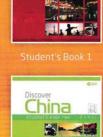




graded readers



Macmillan-FLTRP Chinese Character Dictionary



China

Student's Book



Student's Book





